The Colloquial Series

Series adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

*Afrikaans  *Japanese
*Albanian  *Korean
*Amharic  *Latvian
Arabic (Levantine)  *Lithuanian
*Arabic of Egypt  Malay
Arabic of the Gulf  *Mongolian
    and Saudi Arabia  *Norwegian
Basque  Panjabi
*Breton  *Persian
Bulgarian  *Polish
*Cambodian  *Portuguese
*Cantonese  *Portuguese of Brazil
*Chinese  *Romanian
*Croatian and Serbian  *Russian
*Czech  *Scottish Gaelic
*Danish  *Slovak
*Dutch  *Slovene
*Estonian  Somali
*Finnish  *Spanish
*French  *Spanish of Latin America
*German  *Swahili
*Greek  *Swedish
Gujarati  *Tamil
*Hebrew  *Thai
*Hindi  *Turkish
*Hungarian  *Ukrainian
*Icelandic  Urdu
*Indonesian  *Vietnamese
*Japanese
*Korean
*Latvian
*Lithuanian
*Mongolian
*Norwegian
*Persian
*Polish
*Portuguese
*Portuguese of Brazil
*Romanian
*Russian
*Scottish Gaelic
*Slovak
*Slovene
*Slovene
*Slovene
*Slovak
*Spanish
*Spanish
*Spanish
*Swahili
*Swedish
*Swedish
*Vietnamese
*Welsh

Accompanying cassette(s) (*and CDs) are available for all the above titles. They can be ordered through your bookseller, or send payment with order to Routledge Ltd, ITPS, Cheriton House, North Way, Andover, Hants SP10 5BE, or to Routledge Inc, 29 West 35th Street, New York NY 10001, USA.

COLLOQUIAL CD-ROMs
Multimedia Language Courses
Available in: Chinese, French, Portuguese and Spanish
## Contents

**Preface**  
*Preface vii*

**Acknowledgments**  
*Acknowledgments x*

**Introduction: Korean sounds and Hangul**  
*Introduction: Korean sounds and Hangul 1*

1. **1** 인사  
   Greetings  
   27

2. **2** 친구 소개하기  
   Introducing friends  
   35

3. **3** 사무실에서  
   In an office  
   43

4. **4** 길 물기  
   Asking for directions  
   50

5. **5** 어디 가세요?  
   Where are you going?  
   62

6. **6** 이것이 무엇입니까?  
   What is this?  
   73

7. **7** 점심식사  
   Going out for lunch  
   86

8. **8** 약속하기  
   Making an appointment  
   97

9. **9** 택시잡기  
   Taking a taxi  
   107

10. **10** 물건사기  
    Shopping  
    118

11. **11** 주말여행  
    Weekend trip  
    128

12. **12** 은행에서  
    In the bank  
    138
Meeting friends at a Dabang

At the hotel

Korea’s weather

At International House

Invitation to a Korean house

Moving

At the gas station

At the hospital

Key to exercises:
  Introduction
  Lessons
  Korean–English glossary
  English–Korean glossary
  Glossary of terms used
  Grammar index
Preface

By the 1980s foreign language education in the United States and Europe had shifted its focus to doing something with language rather than knowing about it. Many foreign language teachers now hold the view that speaking should be stressed over grammar, even from the very beginning of a language course. In foreign language classes, learners are consistently encouraged to speak in the target language as much as they can, without paying too much attention to the errors they may make. In order to revitalize foreign language instruction and to facilitate this process, instructors have made special efforts to dramatize their classes with a variety of authentic supplementary materials, ranging from newspaper scripts, timetables, and menus, to audio- and videotapes of talkshows by native speakers.

At the heart of this new approach is the concept of “proficiency,” which is defined as the student’s ability to do something with the language rather than to know about it. This concept is fast becoming the guiding principle around which foreign language curricula and teaching are designed. Colloquial Korean, which tries to implement this concept, joins a new breed of functionally based language textbooks.

This self-instructional volume is designed as an elementary language textbook suitable for complete beginners who visit Korea on business, as tourists or who are taking evening classes. However, it can also be used as an excellent supplementary text for Korean language courses offered at university level. The volume provides a broad range of practical situations that enable students to express basic ideas useful in day-to-day living in Korea. It supplies elementary vocabulary and lays the foundation for comprehension of the fundamental principles of Korean grammar. I have endeavored to present material simply and clearly. Different types of oral practice are implemented in a practical context. Vocabulary and grammar
are presented, in a controlled and cumulative manner, throughout the lessons. The pace in presenting the materials is specifically set for those studying on their own. The recordings which come with this book are designed to stimulate enthusiasm, by presenting the authentic sounds of Korean as spoken by native speakers. A complete Answer key, Korean–English/English–Korean glossary, and Grammar index will facilitate the process of learning Korean.

The primary purpose of this volume is to help learners to speak and understand Korean. The approach always emphasizes the ability of learners of Korean to use what they have studied in each lesson, and all materials and activities in the volume are designed to achieve this goal.

*Colloquial Korean* consists of a tutorial section on Korean sounds and scripts, and twenty lessons. This tutorial is intended to help learners of Korean develop the auditory capability to hear and to discriminate Korean sounds as a learnable system, and to recognize the characters of the Korean alphabet.

Each lesson presents selected dialogues. However, a sentence-by-sentence translation is provided only in the first seven lessons. The eighth lesson serves as a point of departure, after which the learner should feel comfortable with the direct use of the materials without having to rely on English translations. Each lesson has a two-part dialogue, and each part is divided into the following six sections:

**Chapter summary** This box lays out the major objectives each lesson intends to achieve in terms of topics and grammar points.

**Dialogue** The Dialogue introduces ten to twelve lines of Korean sentences on a chosen topic. The aim of presenting dramatized dialogues is to familiarize the reader with language materials that are used to express basic ideas in daily conversational forms.

**Vocabulary** This section lists the key vocabulary items essential to deciphering Korean sentences presented in the dialogues. Some words listed in the Vocabulary or Exercise sections of the previous lessons are re-listed, because they are deemed to be key words or essential to understanding the dialogue or passage concerned.

**Grammar points** These are devoted to explaining the grammatical patterns in basic terms as well as listing some idiomatic expressions. Both categories are incorporated into the dialogue. Each grammar point is accompanied by several further examples.
Exercises  These offer practical material in the patterns of Korean. In working through the exercises, the learner is advised to look up in the Korean–English glossary words not previously introduced or words whose meanings are unfamiliar. However, before you do resort to the glossary, try to deduce the meaning of an unfamiliar word from the context.

Culture point  The Culture point section describes some aspect of Korean culture relevant to the theme of the lesson.

Korean letters may look strange, but you'll find after a little practice that you can recognize and reproduce them effortlessly. We will start by looking at the system of Korean sounds and Hangul. Good luck!
Acknowledgments

*Colloquial Korean* is a self-instructional volume which attempts to integrate my experience of teaching Korean and my research in Korean linguistics with teaching. The volume grew out of its predecessor, *Modern Korean* (first- and second-year course), published in 1990 and 1992, respectively, under grants from the Daewoo Foundation in Seoul, Korea. In publishing *Colloquial Korean*, I am deeply grateful to my former students at Brown University for their input during the experimental phase. I am also grateful to numerous colleagues who have adopted the *Modern Korean* volumes in their Korean language programs, such as the one at Princeton University. Their support and constructive criticism have been greatly appreciated. Without their support this volume, in its present form, could not be published. I am also much indebted to my colleague and long-time friend, Professor Warren Herendeen, in the Department of Language and Communication at Mercy College in Dobbs Ferry, New York, for his warm encouragement and sustained support in many ways. Last, but not least, much credit is due to Simon Bell, Editor in the Language Section at Routledge, who provided me with valuable advice and pedagogical suggestions. I am particularly thankful for the sustained patience and perseverance he has shown to me during the entire course of writing this volume.

Providence, Rhode Island
In-Seok Kim
Introduction: Korean sounds and Hangul

Modern Korean is spoken today throughout the Korean peninsula, the peninsula’s total population being over 60 million. Although Korean’s linguistic affiliation is debatable, it is commonly believed that it is similar to the Japanese language in terms of pronunciation, structure, and words. Before King Sejong invented the Korean phonetic script Hangul, in 1443, the Korean people had to use as many as 50,000 Chinese characters to make communication possible. At that time Chinese characters were only used by the elite; the majority of the population were excluded from using the Chinese characters, which were extremely difficult to learn and use. In order to revamp the system, King Sejong commissioned his scholars to invent a phonetic script of twenty-eight letters. Since then, Korean people have been using Hangul together with some 12,000 Chinese characters in reading and writing, but they have been pronouncing them in the Korean way, which is quite different from the Chinese pronunciation of corresponding characters. In 1945 the North Korean government abandoned the use of Chinese characters entirely, and the South Korean government made some efforts to phase it out gradually, but failed. In recent years, however, there have been signs that the use of Chinese characters is being encouraged in every walk of Korean society, including elementary, middle, and high schools.

This chapter consists of six Units. It provides a step-by-step presentation of Hangul as a phonetic system and prepares you for learning the material in the lessons that follow. Throughout this section, try to listen to the recording of each Unit over and over again, so that you can develop confidence not only in recognizing Korean sounds but also in pronouncing them in as near-native a way as possible. This confidence will lay the foundation for getting to grips with the dialogues in the lessons. If you don’t have the recordings, practice reading the sounds as presented throughout the units.
Unit 1: Vowels

There are eight simple vowels whose qualities are very different from those of English. These are 아, 이, 오, 우, 오, 어, 에, 애.

**English approximations**

아 is pronounced like “Ah” in “Ah-ha”
어 like “ur” in “fur”
은 like “o” in “tow”
우 like “oo” in “too”
으 like “oo” in “book”
이 like “ee” in “see”
에 like “e” in “pet”
애 like “a” in “pat”

**Exercise 1** Circle the vowel you hear:

1 아 어 우 에 에 이
2 을 어 아 오 에 이
3 아 이 에 오 우 을
4 이 아 을 에 오 애
5 어 에 오 이 우 을

**Exercise 2** Circle the last vowel you hear:

1 아 우 이 어 에 에
2 우 에 이 오 우 에
3 을 아 이 어 우 에
4 오 우 에 에 아
5 예 아 이 어 우 오

**Arranging vowels**

All Hangul symbols are arranged from top to bottom, as in 오, 우, 오, and from left to right as in 아, 이, 이, 에, 애. Note that when the symbol for a vowel is written, the empty (or zero) consonant “о” must be added. Each of the eight vowels above is a combination of the zero consonant “о” and a vowel. Look at the following:

Top   о   о   о

Bottom ┌┐
Exercise 3 Follow the order of strokes as indicated and write each of the five vowels three times:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LEFT → RIGHT</th>
<th>STROKE NUMBER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 2 3 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아</td>
<td>← ő</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어</td>
<td>← ő</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이</td>
<td>← ő</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읍</td>
<td>← ő</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>애</td>
<td>← ő</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 4 Follow the order of strokes as indicated and write each of the three vowels three times:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TOP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BOTTOM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STROKE NUMBER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 2: Nine consonants

There are nine consonants:ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ, ㅊ. Consonant symbols are placed at the beginning of the syllables where the symbol “o” is found in the vowels (see Unit 1).

1. The first consonant is ㄱ. It is read as “gi-yuk.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

가 as in “gar” in “gargle”
겨 like “gir” in “girl”
고 like “go” in “gore”
구 like “goo” in “goose”
군 like “goo” in “good”
기 like “gi” in “give”
개 like “ge” in “get”
개 like “ga” in “gag”

You write it like this:

So, writing it involves one stroke, moving from left to right and then down.

2. The second consonant is ㄴ. It is read as “ni-un.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

나 like “nar” in “narcotic”
네 like “ner” in “nerve”
노 like “no” in “nor”
눌 like “nool” in “noose”
농 like “nool” in “nook”
니 like “nkee”
ね like “ne” in “negative”
네 like “na” in “natty”

You write it like this:
So, writing this consonant involves one stroke, moving from top to bottom and then to the right. The pronunciation of the second consonant should not pose any difficulties for English speakers, since it has the same pronunciation as “n.”

3 The third consonant is ㄷ. It is read as “di-gut.” When we combine this with the vowels, we get:

다  like “dar” in “darn”
디  like “dir” in “dirt”
도  like “do” in “dog”
두  like “do”
_MINOR_ 드  like “doo” in “*dook”
디  like “di” in “disk”
데  like “de” in “dedicate”
데  like “da” in “daddy”

In pronouncing this consonant, the tip of the tongue touches the back of the upper teeth.
You write it like this:

So, writing this consonant involves two strokes.

4 The fourth consonant is ㄹ. It is read as “ri-ul.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

라  like “ra” in “rather”
리  like “ru” in “Russia”
로  like “ro” in “robe”
루  like “roo” in “rooster”
༽ like “roo” in “rook”
리  like “ri” in “ring”
رؤ  like “re” in “revel”
رؤ  like “ra” in “rat”

*Note: An asterisk mark (*) indicates that the word given, aiming to show a sound’s Korean pronunciation, cannot be found in English.*
In pronouncing this consonant, the tip of the tongue taps lightly against the gum ridge, as it does when you pronounce the word “letter”.
You write it like this:

So, writing this consonant involves three strokes.

5 The fifth consonant is □. It is read as “mi-um.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

- like “mar” in “market”
- like “mer” in “merchant”
- like “mo” in “mall”
- like “moo” in “mood”
- like “moo” in “*mook”
- like “me”
- like “me” in “met”
- like “ma” in “man”

You write it like this:

This symbol is written with three strokes, as shown.

6 The sixth consonant is у. It is read as “bi-up.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

- like “bar”
- like “bir” in “birth”
- like “bo” in “bore”
- like “boo”
- like “boo” in “book”
- like “be”
- like “be” in “best”
- like “ba” in “bat”
You write this consonant like this:

Four strokes are needed to complete the consonant.

7 The seventh consonant is ㎠. It is read as “si-os.” When we combine this with the vowels, we have:

- 사 like “sar” in “sardine”
- 서 like “sur” in “surf”
- 소 like “sa” in “saw”
- 수 like “soo” in “soothe”
- 스 like “soo” in “soot”
- 시 like “ci” in “city”
- 세 like “se” in “send”
- 쌍 like “sa” in “sand”

You write it like this:

This symbol is written with two strokes.

8 The eighth consonant is ㅇ. It is read as “i-ung” and is an empty consonant, which is placed before any vowel. When the symbol ㅇ is placed at the end of a syllable, its pronunciation is converted to “ng” as in the English word “ink.”

You write it like this:

So, writing this consonant involves a single stroke.
The final consonant is 늘, which is read as “ji-us.” When it is combined with the vowels, we get:

 자 like “jar”
져 like “jer” in “jerk”
죠 like “Joe”
주 like “jui” in “juice”
ㅈ like “joo” in “*jook”
지 like “ji” in “jig”
제 like “je” in “jelly”
제 like “ja” in “jam”

You can write it in two ways:

So, writing this symbol involves either two or three strokes.

**Exercise 5** Practice pronouncing the following syllables and compare them with the model pronunciations on the recording:

1 가
2 나
3 주
4 라
5 마
6 사
7 아
8 자
9 제
10 보

**Exercise 6** Practice writing out the following combinations in the columns given. As you are writing, try to pronounce each combination clearly and loudly.
<p>| | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>저</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>너</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>노</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>도</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>대</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>르</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>레</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>러</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>모</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>브</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>바</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>브</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>사</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>서</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>공</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>자</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>제</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>지</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>저</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>즈</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 7  🔘 Circle the written syllable or word that you hear on the recording:

1 가 너
2 베페
3 다 러
4 저 소
5 제주 제주

Exercise 8  🔘 Circle the pair of syllables you hear consecutively:

1 새가모조바
2 공장동장송
3 니배드소며
4 바다저리조미
5 에다드누저자

Exercise 9  🔘 Write or complete the written syllable that you hear:

1
2
3

Unit 3: Diphthongs 🔘

A diphthong is a combination of semi-vowels (like Y and W vowels) and a vowel. There are thirteen diphthongs. They are composed of six Y vowels and seven W vowels. You can pronounce these sounds by blowing air out of the lung more tensely than you do when pronouncing the simple vowels. Their pronunciation is completed somewhat quickly, while the tongue moves in the direction of the Y or W vowels. But note that the tongue does not go all the way up to the part of the mouth where these two vowels are produced.
The six Y vowels are 야 (야), 았 (애), 여 (여), 예 (예), 요 (요), 우 (우). They are derived from six of the eight simple vowels, as shown in parentheses. These are pronounced close to the English pronunciations:

“ya” in “yard” (야)
“ya” in “yank” (애)
“yu” in “yummy” (여)
“ye” in “yes” (예)
“yo” in “yodel” (요)
“you” (유)

(The simple vowels 오 and 이 are not combined to produce the Y vowel.) An additional stroke on each diphthong signals the Y vowel quality of the sound. This is shown in the following:

아 - + - → 야 + ㅣ → 았
어 - + - → 여 + ㅣ → 예
오 + ㅣ → 요
우 + ㅣ → 우

All of these Y vowels, except 우, can be combined with some of the nine consonants (see Unit 2), e.g., 계, 교, 노, 러, 묘, 벌, 셀.

**Exercise 10**  ● ● Circle the syllables you hear:

1 가-갸
2 겨-구
3 머-져
4 배-배
5 러-러
6 마-마
7 가-교
8 조-제
9 라-료
10 고-겨
Exercise 11  

Circle the words you hear:

1. 야구-야구
2. 교사-교사
3. 여유-여유
4. 여자-여자
5. 여우-여우
6. 오리-오리
7. 여사-예사
8. 조사-주사
9. 자유-자유
10. 애기-야기

2. The seven W vowels are 와 (오 + 아), 워 (우 + 어), 외 (오 + 이), 웨 (우 + 이), 왜 (오 + 에), 웨 (우 + 에), 외 (오 + 이). These vowels are formed by combining two simple vowels, as shown in parentheses. These are pronounced close to the English pronunciations:

- “wa” in “want” (와)
- “were” (워)
- “way” (외)
- “wi” in “wing” (위)
- “wa” in “wag” (웨, 웨)
- “uy” (의) (closest approximation as in “prune”)

All W vowels except 외 can be combined with some of the nine consonants (see Unit 2). Some examples are 워, 쌍, 쌍, 쌍, 쌍.

3. So far, we have dealt with only the syllables that begin with a consonant. However, the consonants can also occur at the end of a syllable, as schematized in the following two combinations (where C = consonant and V = vowel):

범{(CV)  붙{(C

Other common words are 변-분, 간-곤, 간-존, 천-촌.

Placing a consonant at the end of a syllable may be accompanied by some necessary phonetic change. It is not observable when it comes at the beginning. The following words show types of such phonetic change.
The consonant ㄹ in each syllable is pronounced like “l” as in the English word “hill.”

The consonants ㄲ, ㄳ, ㄵ in these nine syllables are not released as they are in English words such as “took,” “pop,” “boot,” etc.

The consonants ㄳ, ㄵ in these nine syllables are pronounced as ㄹ at the end of the word.

The consonant ㅗ is pronounced “ng” as in the English word “ink.”

**Exercise 12** Practice pronouncing the following and compare them with the model pronunciations on the recording:

1 바 2 존 3 본 4 와 5 뭐
6 잔 7 교 8 뭐 9 뢰 10 쓰

**Exercise 13** Practice writing the following ten times:

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>나</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>려</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>와</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>쓰</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>뭐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>븐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>뢰</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>쓰</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>뭐</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>뢰</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 14  ☐☐ Circle the syllable you hear:
1 독-독
2 삭-삭
3 과-귀
4 빌-뷔
5 바-쉐
6 뉴-뉘
7 뒤-수
8 좌-주
9 뒤-뢰
10 의-웨

Exercise 15  ☐☐ Circle the word you hear:
1 감자-겨자
2 종이-문이
3 선박-선갈
4 실력-양력
5 벽지-범지
6 솔병-나물
7 지갑- 걷석
8 야망-당력
9 고개-날개
10 육지-양복

Exercise 16  ☐☐ Complete the unfinished syllables or words you hear:
1 도
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
Unit 4: Aspirated consonants

The second group of consonants is composed of aspirated consonants 홣, ṭ, Ṫ, ꙛ. Aspirated sounds are the ones produced when you puff out the air out of your mouth heavily. An initial consonant in each word should be emphasized, as in “car,” “take,” “paid,” “church.” Note that corresponding words “*gar,” “date,” “bade,” “judge” are not aspirated, because a heavy puff of air does not accompany their pronunciation. These aspirated consonants are formed by modifying the symbols for the plain consonants “스, ṭ, Ṫ, ꙛ” in the corresponding order, as shown below.

1 The first aspirated consonant is 홣. It is read as “chi-us” and is pronounced as “ch” in “church,” e.g., 촌, 천, 초, 추, 채.

You write it like this:

So, this symbol is written with three or four strokes (that is, an additional stroke on the plain 스).

2 The second aspirated consonant is ṭ. It is read as “ki-uk” and is pronounced as “k” in “car,” e.g., 커, 큰, 커, 카.

You write it like this:

So, writing the symbol requires two strokes to be completed (that is, an additional stroke on ṭ).
3 The third aspirated consonant is ㅃ. It is read as “ti-ut” and is pronounced as “t” in “toy,” e.g., 토, 터, 테, 투.

You write it like this:

So, it requires three strokes to complete (one additional stroke on ₩).

4 The fourth aspirated consonant is ㅍ. It is read as “pi-up” and is pronounced as “p” in “pay,” as in 포, 폐, 파, 표.

You write it like this:

So, this symbol requires four strokes. It can be combined with not only some simple vowels (see Unit 1), but also some diphthongs (see Unit 3).

5 The consonant symbol ㅎ is pronounced “h” as in the English word “hike,” which is produced by narrowing the distance between the vocal cords. This symbol requires three strokes to write and causes ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ to become aspirated.

You write it like this:

Exercise 17 Practice pronouncing the following and compare them with the model pronunciations on the recordings:

1 처
2 책
Exercise 18

Practice writing the following ten times:

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>처</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>총</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>커</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>칼</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>텅</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>튀</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>테</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>파</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>평</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>형</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 19

Circle the syllable or word you hear:

1 종-종
2 병-평
3 착-직
4 자리-차리
5 다방-타방
6 바리-파리
7 자리-차리
8 벌덕-팔덕
9 현대-현대
10 후기-추기
Exercise 20  ○○ Circle two syllables you hear consecutively:

1 탄 난 람 난 개
2 김 첨 첨 개 덴
3 화의 장 명 냅
4 몽 난 빛 빛 말
5 쳉 거 루 담 백

Exercise 21  ○○ Complete the unfinished syllables as you listen to them:

1 cheated
2 오 오
3 별
4 •
5 찍

Exercise 22  ○○ Write down the syllables or words as you listen to them:

1
2
3

Unit 5: Double consonants  ○○

Certain plain consonants can be doubled (repeated) to produce double consonants. These are 틀, 틀, 빛, 믿, 믿, and are derived
from the plain consonants ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ, respectively. The doubling process is shown in the following:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{n + n} & \rightarrow \text{tn} \\
\text{t + t} & \rightarrow \text{tt} \\
\text{n + n} & \rightarrow \text{nn} \\
\text{a + a} & \rightarrow \text{aa} \\
\text{s + s} & \rightarrow \text{ss}
\end{align*}
\]

The double consonants are pronounced by holding one's mouth tense and then suddenly releasing the sound without aspiration. The pronunciation of each double consonant is closest to “k” in “sky” (ㅈ), “t” in “stick” (ㅌ), “p” in “spy” (ㅍ), “s” in “sink” (ㅅ), and “t” in “cuts” (ㅈ). Another group of double consonants may come at the end of a syllable. These consonants are

ㅂ, 뽣, 뻣, 넁, 네, 률, 륳, 르, 륵, 륶

all of which combine two different consonants. However, only one of these two consonants is pronounced, the knowledge of which one can come to grips with in the course of learning Korean. The double consonants 타 and ㅁ can also come finally, and they are pronounced like their corresponding plain consonants ㄱ, ㅅ. The following examples show which consonant is pronounced and which is not:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>박 (박)</th>
<th>할 (할)</th>
<th>박 (박)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>살 (실)</td>
<td>넥 (넉)</td>
<td>잡 (잡)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맘 (딴)</td>
<td>올 (울)</td>
<td>많 (만)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>동 (돌)</td>
<td>굽 (굴)</td>
<td>엇 (잇)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>짜 (짜)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 23** Practice pronouncing the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>11</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>갈</td>
<td>때</td>
<td>자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골</td>
<td>벨</td>
<td>쓳</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공</td>
<td>빨</td>
<td>적</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>몽</td>
<td>설</td>
<td>쪽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독</td>
<td>쌀</td>
<td>쾽</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Exercise 24** Practice writing the following ten times:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>공</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>뭉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>또</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>빨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>빛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>뿌</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>죽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>젤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>착</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>걸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>쓰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>죽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>층</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>목</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 25** 〇〇  Circle the syllable you hear:

1  거-겨
2  구-꾸
3  또-도
4  돌-돌
5  빙-붕
6  다-띠
7  돌-달
Exercise 26 .Circle the word you hear:

1 가다-까다
2 꾸다-그다
3 코다-고다
4 달랑-탈랑
5 궁궁-꽁꽁
6 조석-조석
7 잘다-잘다
8 적적-적적
9 부다-푸다
10 서다-쓰다

Exercise 27  Circle the word you hear:

1 가다-카다-까다
2 크다-크다-끄다
3 고다-코다-꼬다
4 달랑-탈랑-탈랑
5 궁궁-꽁꽁-꽁꽁
6 종-종-종
7 잘다-잘다-잘다
8 자다-차다-차다
9 굴-굴-굴
10 부다-푸다-푸다

Exercise 28  Complete the unfinished syllable that corresponds to each one you hear:

1 
2 
3 

음
애
말
Unit 6: Summary, word structure, and other aspects of Korean

1 Modern Korean uses 40 sounds, consisting of 8 simple vowels, 13 diphthongs, and 19 consonants, as shown in the following summary chart:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple vowels</th>
<th>아 어 오 우 음 이 에 애</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diphthongs</td>
<td>야 여 요 율 애 예</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y vowels</td>
<td>야 여 요 율 애 예</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W vowels</td>
<td>와 워 위 웨 위 의</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consonants</td>
<td>plain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>double</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 The following Korean alphabet chart shows all the possible combinations between 10 major vowels and diphthongs selected and 14 consonants (except double consonants). This means that all of these are allowable combinations, but the ones that are marked * are not used. Since it is not always easy for even a native speaker of Korean to distinguish between possible combinations and impossible ones, learners are advised to study the possible combinations of these as they come across them in the sentences presented in this book.
Only some of other remaining vowels and diphthongs can be combined with the consonants, including double consonants, as in: 족, 빌, 뵈, 위, 좌, 꼴, 꼽, 꼾, 개.

3 A Korean letter is made up of three parts: initial, medial, and final. The first two parts are composed of either a vowel or diphthong sound, while the last only consists of the consonant (including the zero consonant ㅗ). There are three types of combinations that can occur.

3.1 All letters in the above chart show a series of two-part letters. When we place the consonant (let’s say ㄱ) of the three-part letters underneath the letters of the first line in the column (which is already the combination of a consonant ㄱ and a vowel ㅏ), we get the ten full letters 각, ㄱ갑, 객, 갑, 곡, *墨西, 국, *국, 금, 긴. However, letters that are marked * among these are not possible letters, the knowledge of which again belongs to the area of the native speaker’s intuition. We can do the same combination again with a series
of letters on the first line in the column. By placing the arbitrary consonant ㅏ vertically underneath them, we get another ten full letters on the first line of the column, only three of which are used in Modern Korean: 결, 곤, 굿. By placing other consonants and even aspirated and double consonants underneath the letters on the chart, we can get the other full letters in use. Some of them are: 공, 농, 놀, 강, 랑, 돈, 찾, 익.

3.2 When we place the third consonant (say ㄱ) underneath the combined letter (e.g., 과) of a consonant (ㄱ) and a diphthong (와), we then get the full letter 과. Likewise, we can get many other three-part full letters which are: 권, 권, 싸, 싸, 꼭. Here again, the learner is advised to learn three-part full letters using the diphthongs, as they occur in the sentences in the book.

3.3 Double consonants can also fill the third position, forming a full letter. These letters are: 잇, 묵, 삐. And yet two different consonants can fill the third position as in 잇, 둘, 잇, 잇, 잇, etc. As explained in Unit 5, only one representative consonant is actually pronounced. Words of the first group above are pronounced as if they were 잇, 묵, 삐, 삐, while words of the second group are pronounced as if they were 안, 둘, 엽, 잇.

4 Word structure Korean words are usually built out of combining a number of letters, the process of which we have seen above. For example, the word 가다 has two letters and is used as a verb meaning “go.” There are also longer words than this such as 모르다 “do not know,” 인사하다 “greet.” However, even a limited number of single letters can be used as if they were words: 강 “river,” 눈 “eyes,” 집 “house,” etc.

5 Stress and intonation Unlike English, Korean employs neither a word stress (sometimes called accent) nor a sentence stress. Every English word puts an emphasis on one of its syllables (like on the first syllable in “history”) whereas every Korean word sounds flat and regular. Furthermore, Korean sentences do not receive any stress, unlike English sentences (e.g., ‘The baby is interested in playing with a toy”). Because of this, to an English-speaking person, the rhythm of Korean sounds very mechanical, where sounds are lined up together with equal force and at regular intervals. However, Korean employs three kinds of intonation at the end of a sentence:
rising, falling, falling and momentary sustenance. The first type is used for statements, whereas the second type is for questions. The last type is used for commands and requests. The difference between them will be explained in detail in Lesson 2.

**6 Punctuation** The Korean language uses three kinds of punctuation mark at the end of a sentence. These are the period (.), the question mark (?), and the exclamation point (!). The comma (,) and other separators – the colon (:), semicolon (;), and the dash (-) – are also used within a sentence. Quotation marks (" ", ‘ ’) are often used to enclose the exact words of a speaker or writer. The usage of all these punctuation marks is very similar to that of English and other languages.

**Korean alphabet bingo game**

*Directions*

Write down in the box on p.26 any sixteen of the thirty-five Korean letters given below. While the instructor on the recording calls the letters in random order, cross out the letters you have written when you hear them called. If you cross out four letters in a row – in a vertical, horizontal, or diagonal direction – you can call “bingo.” Then, you may stop the recording and check them against the model answer (see Key to exercises in the back of the book).

가 거 뉴 디 유 요 추
처 토 표 푸 흑 히 치
루 로 카 파 하 나
바 머 커 마 공 샌 동
갈 거 빼 빨 쳐 찰 쪽
Should it turn out that all four words are lined up in any of the three directions, you are a real bingo winner. Congratulations! You have at last mastered the Korean alphabet system. Now you may proceed to Lesson 1.
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:

- greet someone properly in Korean
- address Korean adults
- write Korean names
- use the sentence ending -세요
- use the negative marker 안
- use the postposition -에
- use the topic case marker -은/는

Dialogue 1  

Mr. Kim and Miss Lee, colleagues in the office, casually greet each other on the street after not having seen each other for some time. This kind of greeting may occur at any time of day and in any situation. Mr. Kim also asks about one of their other colleagues, Mr. Park

Kim: 안녕하세요?
Lee: 김선생님 안녕하세요?
Kim: 오래간만입니다.
Lee: 예, 오래간만입니다.
Kim: 요즘을 어떻게 지내세요?
Lee: 잘 지내시나.
Kim: 박선생님은 어떻게세요?
Lee: 박선생님 잘 지내세요.

Kim: How are you?
Lee: How are you, Mr. Kim?
Kim: It's been a long time since I saw you.
Lee: Yes, it has.
Kim: How is everything with you these days?
Lee: I'm doing all right.
Kim: How about Mr. Park?
Lee: He's doing all right.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>안녕하디야?</td>
<td>How are you?</td>
<td>안녕하디야</td>
<td>How are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하다</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>어때?</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오래간만</td>
<td>long time</td>
<td>오래간만</td>
<td>long time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

**Asking “How are you?”**

Most phrases introduced in this dialogue are idiomatic expressions which do not require further analysis. For example, the phrase ‘안녕하디야?’ literally means “Are you in peace?” but it is functionally translated into the English expression “How are you?” Thus, these expressions should be learned as set phrases.

**Addressing Korean adults**

Koreans rarely address anyone by name without using an appropriate title. They use a job-related title alone or with a last name, after which a noun suffix ‘님’ is attached, indicating respect shown to the person. When the person’s job-related title is not clear, they commonly use 선생님 (“teacher” plus honorific noun suffix), with his/her last name.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examples using job-related titles</th>
<th>Examples using last names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>선생님</td>
<td>김선생님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교수님</td>
<td>이선생님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의사이 선생님</td>
<td>박선생님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김박사님 (Ph.D. degree)</td>
<td>최선생님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과장님</td>
<td>section chief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사장님</td>
<td>president</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
However, when a senior employee of an organization addresses a relatively new employee (especially a high school or college graduate) whose status (or age) is lower than his, English loan words 미스터 (for a male) and 미스 (for a female) can be used. This way of addressing employees is widely practiced especially in modern firms in Korea.

미스터 김 Mr. Kim
미스터 송 Mr. Song
미스 나 Miss Na
미스 한 Miss Han

Writing Korean names

The full Korean name takes the order of last name first, first name second as in:

김달수 Dal Soo Kim
한근수 Geun Soo Han
조재철 Jae Gul Jo

Other typical expressions

Other ways of responding to the expression 요즘 어떻게 지내세요? are as follows:

그래요 So-so
좋아요 Good
잘 지냅니다. I'm doing all right.
바쁘게 지닙니다. I am busy.

Polite expression for “How are you?”

When people meet each other for the first time, they tend to use a more polite expression 안녕하십니까? In this case, both parties usually use a title of respect (선생 “teacher” in its literal sense) combined with an honorific marker 님. The junior person may also use this expression to the senior in a greeting to show more respect.

윤 선생님, 안녕하십니까? Mr. Yoon, how are you?
김 선생님, 안녕하십니까? I'm fine. How about you, Mr. Kim?
**Topic case marker -은/는**

When an element of a sentence introduces a new topic in comparison with something talked about in the previous sentence, the suffix -은 is attached to the element ending in a consonant, but the suffix -는 is added to the element ending in a vowel. This topic case marker means roughly "As for . . ."

| 박선생님은 안녕하세요. | Mr. Park is OK.        |
| 이선생님은 잘 지내세요. | Mr. Lee is doing well. |
| 미스 리는 잘 지내세요. | Miss Lee is doing well. |
| 미스 최는 잘 지내세요. | Miss Choi is doing well. |

**Exercises**

1 Greet the following colleagues whom you run across on the streets of Seoul.

a Mr. Kim  
b Professor Lee  
c Section Chief Park  
d Miss Kang

2 Greet the following people you are meeting for the first time.

a Mr. Kim (M.D.)  
b President of the company  
c Miss Chang (teacher)

3 Someone asks you how everything is with you these days. Respond to the question with the following:

a I'm doing OK.  
b So-so.  
c These days, I'm busy.

4 Rearrange the words of the dialogue to make sense.

a 오래, 입니다. 예, 간만  
b 리, 미스, 하세요? 안녕  
c 지내세요? 요즘은, 어떻게  
d 교수님, 하십니까? 안녕, 김
5 Pronounce and write the following names in Korean.
   a Ki Soo Kang
   b Sang Dal Park
   c Keun Young Kim

6 You are the president of a Korean company which has recently hired a number of new staff members. How would you address the following staff when you run across them in the hallway?
   a Mr. Kim
   b Ms. Han
   c Miss Na
   d Mr. Shin

7 Ask a colleague how the following are doing at the moment (these days):
   a Mr. Jin
   b Miss Hwang
   c Section Chief Park
   d Ms. Lee (your junior)

Culture point
The basic concepts which underlie the deferential system of the Korean language are rooted in Confucian ethics. The tenets of this ancient Chinese philosophy dictate three beliefs: 1, one person may be more powerful than another; 2, one may be older than another; 3, one may be lower in social rank than another. The one who is deemed more powerful, older, and higher in social rank receives corresponding respect through the language used. This is the reason the Korean language is full of honorific vocabulary and expressions, the use of which often baffles the learner. Those learning Korean must understand that Koreans do not usually honor equality in their daily interpersonal relationships. Instead, a sense of inequality permeates the Korean language, and a speaker has to find an appropriate social rank or right age of the other person in order to communicate with him or her in the proper manner. When using 미스터 and 미스, which are English-influenced terms of address, one should address them neither to people with whom one is not very familiar nor to people more powerful and/or older than oneself.

Dialogue 2  Mr. Kim and Miss Lee exchange the following short greetings when they pass. They may or may not have met once during the day
Kim: iskeyeun, boppesseyo?
Lee: ye,geom boppyeo. komseonneun anyeo.
Kim: jeron belmo an boppyeo.
Lee: jimin eori gaseo?
Kim: yoseokyeo gajindas.
  iskeyeun eori gaseo?
Lee: jeron sidangyeo gajindas.
Kim: guryeo, aneesun gaseo.
Lee: ye, aneesun gaseo.

Kim: Are you busy, Mr. Lee?
Lee: Yes, I am a little busy. And you?
Kim: I'm not very busy.
Lee: Where are you going now?
Kim: I'm going to the post office.
  Where are you going?
Lee: I'm going to a restaurant.
Kim: Well, goodbye then.
Lee: Bye.

Vocabulary

바쁘세요     busy        식당          restaurant
 좀           a little     그럼          well, then
별로          particularly 안녕히       peacefully
안            not          저는          as for me (humble
가세요       go           Aneesun       expression)
갑니다         go           우체국        post office
지금           now          
어디           where

Language points

Sentence ending -세요

This sentence ending, as attached to the verb stem, is used to express a statement with falling intonation, a question with rising intonation, and a request with momentarily sustained and falling intonation. The honorific marker -세요 indicates respect shown to the listener who is older or higher in social status than the speaker.
**Verb stem**

바쁘다  busy  
가다  go  
어떻다  how  
지금 바쁘세요?  
이선생님 지금 바쁘세요.  

**Sentence ending (honorific)**

바쁘세요  
가세요  
어RGBA요  
Are you busy now?  
Mr. Lee is busy now.  

**The negative marker  -안**

This marker negates most Korean verbs except identification verbs (which will be introduced at a later stage) when it is placed before a verb.

박선생님은 바쁘세요.  
박선생님은 안 바쁘세요.  
이선생님은 교회에 가세요.  
이선생님은 교회에 안 가세요.  

Mr. Park is busy.  
Mr. Park isn’t busy.  
Mr. Lee goes to church.  
Mr. Lee doesn’t go to church.  

**The manner adverb  별로**

This can also be used only with the negative marker 안 or other forms of negation (i.e., -지 않다) in the sentence.

지금 별로 안 바쁘요.  
별로 안 좋아요.  

I am not very busy.  
I am not very well.  

**The postposition  -에**

This postposition is attached directly to a place word and is followed by 가다 “go,” or 오다 “come”, or their compound verbs. It refers to a specific direction.

교회에 갑니다.  
도서관에 갑니다.  
집에 갑니다.  
오늘 교회에 오세요.  

(I) am going to church.  
(I) am going to the library.  
(I) am going home.  
Please come to church today.
Exercises

8 Assume that your father is going to the following places and that someone asks where he is going. Answer the question using -세요?

a church
b library
c restaurant
d post office

9 Someone asks if you are going to the following places. Answer the question in the negative.

a church
b library
c home
d post office

10 You are helping a friend with their Korean grammar. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

a 강선생님은 안 별로 바쁘세요.
b 미스터 리는 별로 좋으세요.
c 미스 진은 안 교회에 가세요.
d 최교수님은 도서관에 별로 가세요.
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
- introduce your friend(s) to a third party in different settings
- say goodbye to one another
- use three forms of expressions: declarative, interrogative, and request
- use personal pronouns (e.g., 나, 너, 그, etc.)
- use the subject case markers -이/가
- use the future tense -겠

Dialogue 1  Mr. Kim introduces one of his friends, Mary Jin, to Mr. Kang at the end-of-the-year party

KIM: 진 선생님, 안녕하세요?
KANG: 예, 김 선생님, 안녕하세요?
KIM: 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?
KANG: 덕택에 잘 지내는다.
KIM: 강 선생님, 제 친구 소개하겠습니다.
   이분이 메리 진씨입니다.
JIN: 처음 뵐겠습니다. 저 메리 진입니다.
KANG: 처음 뵐겠습니다. 저 강기수입니다.

KIM: Miss Jin. How are you?
KANG: I'm fine. Mr. Kim. How are you?
KIM: How are you getting along these days?
KANG: I'm doing fine, thanks to you.
KIM: Mr. Kang. Let me introduce my friend to you.
   This is Mary Jin.
JIN: Nice to meet you. I'm Mary Jin.
KANG: Nice to meet you. I'm Ki Soo Kang.
Vocabulary

덕택에  thanks (to you)  이분  this person
친구  friend  처음  first time
소개하다  introduce  뵐다  see (humble form)
제  my  씨  Mr. or Miss

Language points

Forms of expression

Korean sentences use five forms of expression: 1 declarative, 2 interrogative, 3 request, 4 command, and 5 exclamation. These forms of expression are determined by their verb ending and intonation. Here are examples of the first three types:

Declarative
오래간만입니다.  It’s been a long time since I last saw you.
처음 뵐겠습니다.  I’m glad to meet you.
이제 가봐야겠습니다.  I must be going now.
안 바빠요.  I’m not busy.

Interrogative
안녕하십니까?  How are you?
메리 스미쓰입니까?  Are you Mary Smith?
이분 아세요?  Do you know this person?
바쁘세요?  Are you busy?

Request
안녕히 가십시오.  Bye-bye (lit. please go in peace).
안녕히 계십시오.  Bye-bye (lit. please stay in peace).
인사하십시오.  Please say hello.

Examples for commands and exclamations will be introduced later.

The verb ending -입니다, -습니까 is exclusively used in declarative sentences, but the verb ending -입니까?, -습니까? is used for interrogative sentences. However, the verb ending -십시오 is limited to a request. The ending -요 can be used, with varying intonation, to form more than one kind of expression.
**Linking verb** - 입니다

The linking verb - 입니다 is a verb that identifies the predicate of a sentence with the subject, the function of which is to link the subject and predicate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Predicate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이분이</td>
<td>강기수씨-입니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이분이</td>
<td>강기수씨-입니까?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the English verb “to be” (“am,” “are,” “is”) is incorporated into Korean predicate endings by using - 입니다. It must always be attached to the preceding noun.

이분이  한기수씨    입니다.
This person  Ki Soo Han + is

**Subject case markers** - 이/가

Korean uses the subject case marker - 이 after words ending in a consonant and - 가 after those ending in a vowel. The systematic use of case markers in Korean such as these is rather complex, so this topic will be gradually expanded in the forthcoming lessons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words ending in a consonant</th>
<th>Words ending in a vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이분이</td>
<td>한기수씨가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저사람이</td>
<td>내가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책이</td>
<td>우리가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책상이</td>
<td>친구가</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The future tense marker** - 겠

The future tense marker, inserted between the verb stem and the ending, indicates an action that takes place in the future, or a condition, or quality which will exist at some other time.

홍차 한잔 하겠어요.  I'd like to drink a cup of tea.
공부하겠습니다.       I'll study.
지금 가겠어요.        I'll go now.
내일 오겠어요.        I'll come tomorrow.
Exercises

1 You are on the phone and the person at the other end of the line asks who you are. Respond to the question.

2 Using the vocabulary given, answer the question 이분이 누구입니까?
   a Mary Jin
   b Professor Kim
   c Mary Smith

3 Read the following English words and choose an appropriate subject case marker suitable for their Korean equivalents.
   a we
   b my friend
   c desk

4 One of your friends thinks you’re going to be busy with several activities over the weekend and asks what you are going to do. Respond to his questions.
   a go to church
   b study
   c go to the library

5 Examine the following sentences and write in “D” for declarative sentences, “I” for interrogative sentences, and “R” for request sentences.
   a 이분이 강기수씨입니다.
   b 안녕하세요?
   c 인사하세요.
   d 저분 소개하세요.

Culture point
When a Korean introduces someone to a third party, he usually takes him/her to a person who is older, more powerful, and/or senior. The first questions the senior person will ask of the person being introduced are likely to be of a somewhat personal and private nature and may include questions about the younger or less powerful person’s age, occupation, marriage, or the number of children he or she is raising. By gleaning this information from the one introduced, the senior or more powerful person can establish not only interpersonal relationships with him/her, but also the register of the language used
in communicating with the person being introduced. This kind of "interpersonal relationship" is often carried to an extreme when Koreans meet foreigners for the first time. That is, they rush to ask similar questions of them, although the questions require personal and private answers. Foreigners need to realize that such questions are not intended to make one feel uncomfortable, but are a socially acceptable conversational form. As a preventive measure, one may draw on some sort of wit or wisdom with which to dodge the questions, without looking too evasive!

**Dialogue 2**  
Miss Yoon takes one of her colleagues, John Kim, to a party in her friend's house. His name is Ki Soo Kang. Miss Yoon introduces him to Mr. Kang. After having spent some time at the party, John Kim wants to say goodbye to the host.

**Miss Yoon:** 강기수씨, 이분 아세요?
**Mr. Kang:** 아니요, 모릅니다.
**Miss Yoon:** 인사하셔요.
  이분이 존 김씨입니다.
**John Kim:** 처음 뵐겠습니다.
**Mr. Kang:** 처음 뵐겠습니다.
  (저) 강기수입니다.
  (Later)
**John Kim:** 이제 가 바야겠습니다.
  그럼, 다음에 또 뵐겠습니다.
**Mr. Kang:** 안녕히 가십시오.
**John Kim:** 안녕히 계십시오.

**Miss Yoon:** Mr. Kang. Do you know this person?
**Mr. Kang:** No, I don’t know him.
**Miss Yoon:** Please greet him.
  This is John Kim.
**John Kim:** Glad to meet you.
**Mr. Kang:** Glad to meet you.
  I'm Ki Soo Kang.
  (Later)
**John Kim:** I must be going now.
  Well, then, I'll be seeing you again.
**Mr. Kang:** Bye now.
**John Kim:** Bye.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>알다</td>
<td>know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니요</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>인사하다</td>
<td>greet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가 보다</td>
<td>try to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계십시오</td>
<td>bye-bye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Basic Korean sentence structure

Korean sentences basically consist of a subject and a predicate. The subject is the part of the sentence which tells you “who” or “what.” The predicate is the part of the sentence which tells what someone or something does (or is).

Subject | Predicate
---|---
저 | 메리 진입니다
저 | 이분 알아요.

One of the characteristics of Korean is that the verb is always placed at the end of the sentence.

Verb

이분 | 아세요?
안녕히 | 가십시오.
제 친구 | 소개해겠습니까.
etc.

Another characteristic of Korean is its tendency to omit the subject of a sentence if this is obvious from the context.

Subject | Predicate
---|---
(저) | 메리 진입니다. I'm Mary Jin.
(저) | 이분 알아요. I know her (this person).
(선생님) | 이분 아세요? Do you know her (this person)?
**Personal pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>familiar</td>
<td>나/내 I</td>
<td>우리 we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>humble</td>
<td>저/제</td>
<td>저희</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second</td>
<td>familiar</td>
<td>너/네 you</td>
<td>너희 you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third</td>
<td>familiar</td>
<td>그 사람 he/she</td>
<td>그 사람들 they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>honorific</td>
<td>그분</td>
<td>그분들</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First and second person singular pronouns require specific particles when they are used as the subject of a sentence. Pronouns such as 나, 저, 너 always take 는 (thus 나는, 저는, 너는), whereas pronouns such as 내, 제, 네 always take 가 (thus 내가, 제가, 네가). Note that Korean uses honorifics, where a person of high social status receives respect in speech. One can also indirectly honor the other person present or a third party absent from the context by using either very respectful words for them or words lowering oneself.

**Saying goodbye**

Korean has distinctive forms for saying goodbye to a remaining or departing host or hostess. Regardless of whether one is the person leaving or staying, English speakers use the expressions, “goodbye,” “bye-bye,” or “so long.” In contrast, Korean speakers use the expression 안녕히 계세요 (lit. “stay in peace”) to the remaining host or hostess, and use the somewhat different expression 안녕히 가세요 (lit. “go in peace”) to the departing guest. When both parties leave, they of course exchange the same, latter, expression 안녕히 가세요.

**Exercises**

6 Someone asks you whether you know Mr. Lee, who has recently joined the company, and whom you do not know. How would you respond to the question?
7 Someone asks you whether you know Miss Kang, who became Prime Minister of Korea. You and Miss Kang attended the same college in the United States. How would you respond?

8 You are about to leave a party which is still in full swing. How would you say goodbye to the remaining guests at the party?

9 You have invited several people in the neighborhood. Having had a good time for a while, they are now leaving. How would you say goodbye to them?

10 There are several people at work whom you have to introduce to your roommate. Introduce the following individuals:
   a Mr. Kim
   b Section Chief Park
   c Miss Hwang

11 Choose one word that does not belong to the given group:
   a 나, 저, 우리, 너
   b 우리, 저회, 너희, 그 사람
   c 나, 너, 그 사람, 저회

12 Translate the following expressions, giving their Korean equivalents:
   a I'm glad to meet you.
   b Please meet him.
   c This is Jenny Lee.
   d I must be going.
   e I'll be seeing you again.
In an office

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• visit friends at work
• offer a visitor something to drink
• use the endings for a statement, a question, and a request
• use built-in honorific vocabulary
• use honorific insertions -세/시
• use the informal ending -이/예요
• use the causal conjunction -아/여서

Dialogue 1  ☞ Kyung Hee Park has arrived at the office where Mr. Kim works and asks the secretary if he is in

PARK: 수고하십시오. 김선생님 계세요?
SECRETARY: 네, 누구세요?
PARK: (저) 박경희입니다.
김선생님(의) 사무친구입니다.
SECRETARY: 잠깐 기다리세요. 이리 앉으세요.
PARK: 네, 감사합니다.
(A moment later)
SECRETARY: 들어가세요.
PARK: Hello. Is Mr. Kim in?
SECRETARY: Yes. May I take your name?
PARK: I'm Kyung Hee Park.
(I'm) a business friend.
SECRETARY: Please wait a moment. Have a seat here.
PARK: Thank you.
(A moment later)
SECRETARY: Please go in.
**Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>수고하십시오</td>
<td>Hello</td>
<td>기다리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누구</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>이리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사업</td>
<td>business</td>
<td>앉다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠깐</td>
<td>a moment</td>
<td>감사하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어가다</td>
<td>enter</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Language points**

*Two different forms of honorifics*

The Korean language makes use of two different forms of honorifics – short and long – when making a statement, asking a question, and making a request. These forms are almost interchangeable and there is almost no difference in meaning between them. The long form, however, is slightly more formal (thus more polite) than the short form (informal). The latter form tends to be used more commonly by women than by men.

*Statement with falling intonation*

- 셰요 (short) - 싶니다 (long)
- 바쁘세요. 바쁘십니다. (Someone) is busy.
- 기다리세요. 기다리십시오. (Someone) is waiting.
- 계세요. 계십시오. (Someone) is in.

*Question with rising intonation*

- 셰요? (short) - 싶니까? (long)
- 바쁘세요? 바쁘십니까? Are you busy?
- 기다리세요? 기다리십니까? Are you waiting?
- 계세요? 계십시오? Is someone in?

*Request with momentary sustenance and falling intonation*

- 셰요 (short) - 싶시오 (long)
- 인사하세요. 인사하십시오. Please greet.
- 안녕히 가세요. 안녕히 가십시오. Please go in peace (Bye-bye).
- 기다리세요. 기다리십시오. Please wait.
**Built-in honorific verbs**

Korean uses a system of built-in honorific verbs, which are separate from the honorific verbs above. These honorific verbs are derivable by inserting either -세 (short form) or -십시 (long form) into a verb stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb stem</th>
<th>Honorific form</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>있다</td>
<td>계시다</td>
<td>to exist, to be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자다</td>
<td>주무시다</td>
<td>to sleep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>잡수시다</td>
<td>to eat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말하다</td>
<td>말씀 드리다</td>
<td>to say, tell, speak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>락다</td>
<td>to see</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주다</td>
<td>드리다</td>
<td>to give</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>묻다</td>
<td>여주십다</td>
<td>to ask</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Interrupting someone at a job site**

The expression 수고하십니다 literally means that you are engaged in doing hard work. In lieu of a greeting, you may use this expression when you try to interrupt those engaged in work. However, you cannot use it to a third party absent from the scene.

수고하십니다.  May I interrupt you?
홍선생님 계세요?  Is Mr. Hong in?
아니오, 지금 안 계십니다.  No, he isn’t now.

**Exercises**

1 Write down the following three things you think your father will do today, using the short form ending -세요:
   a  stay at home
   b  drink a cup of coffee
   c  be busy

2 Do the same as in 1, this time using the long form ending -십니다.

3 You have thrown a party for your friends at work and you are offering them a cup of something to drink.
   a  milk
   b  beer
c ginseng tea
d soda

4 One of your friends has visited you in the office and your secretary asks him to do the following, while she makes sure you are free to see him:

a have a seat here
b come this way
c go in

5 Translate the following sentences into Korean, using the honorific verb ending -세요:

a Mr. Kim sits over here.
b Miss Lee is sleeping.
c Dr. Chang is going home now.

6 Do the same as in 5, using the honorific verb ending -십니다.

7 Translate the following dialogue:

A: Hello. Is Miss Chang in?
B: Yes, she is in. May I take your name?
A: I am a business friend.
B: Please wait a moment.
A: Thank you.

Culture point
Koreans, as a rule, place great value on their feelings of self-esteem. This feeling is known as “kibun” in Korean, which is not easy to translate into English, although it might be loosely translated as “karma.” Koreans feel jubilant when their “kibun” is good. However, they feel gloomy when it is bad. For this reason, a foreigner should be careful not to push Koreans off the edge – not to turn their “kibun” bad – in verbal communication with them. Once their “kibun” feels bad, reaching any agreement with Koreans is very difficult. Of course, this is not to say that a foreigner ought to flatter Koreans in order to maintain successful communications with them, but sometimes a little carelessness on the part of the foreigner may lead to a disastrous situation where the relationship is irrevocably damaged.

Dialogue 2 Kyung Hee Park and her former business partner, Mr. Kim, exchange greetings and carry on a brief conversation. Mr. Kim offers her a cup of coffee
PARK: Kim, 안녕하세요? 오래만이에요.
KIM: 네, 오래만이입니다. 여기 오셨어요.
     커피 한 잔 하시겠어요?
PARK: 네, 감사합니다. 김 선생님, 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?
KIM: 저는 편찮습니다. 박 선생님은 어떠세요?
PARK: 바쁘게 지내세요. 요즘 장사가 잘 돼서 기분이 좋아요.
KIM: 참, 좋으시겠어요.

PARK: Mr. Kim, how are you? It's been a long time since I saw you.
KIM: Yes, it's been a long time. Have a seat here.
     Would you like a cup of coffee?
PARK: Yes, thank you. Mr. Kim, how's everything with you these days?
KIM: I'm okay. How about you, Mr. Park?
PARK: I'm really busy. And my business is doing well, so I'm in a good mood.
KIM: You must be really happy.

Vocabulary

바쁘게  busily
장사  business
기분  mood, spirits
좋다  good
잘 되다  doing well
오래간만  long time
요즘  lately

- 이예요, 입니다  is, are
예, 네  yes
여기  here
커피  coffee
한 잔  one cup
판참다  OK
참, 정말로  really

Language points

The informal ending -이예요

A non-honorific long ending -입니 루 is often pronounced as -이예요 and spelled in this way. Female speakers and school-children tend to adopt this pronunciation, but male speakers prefer to use its original form. When the sentence ending -이예요 comes after a noun ending in a vowel, the vowel 이 is usually contracted to the following vowel 에, resulting in a single syllable 예.
The adverbial ending -게

Attached to certain adjectives, this ending makes the adjective into an adverb.

- 빠르다 빠르게 quickly
- 느리다 느리게 slowly
- 바쁘다 바쁘게 busily

The conjunction -아(어/여)서

This conjunction is used to indicate a causal relationship between two combined sentences. It is directly attached to the stem of the first action verb and is followed by the second verb.

- 오늘은 바빠서, 도서관에 안가요. Since I'm busy today, I am not going to the library.
- 눈이 많이 와서, 교회에 안가요. Since it has snowed a lot, I am not going to church.
- 피곤해서, 자겠어요. Since I’m tired, I am going to sleep.

The possessive marker -의

This particle indicates possession: it is equivalent to the English “’s” and “of.” The first noun with the particle modifies the second noun. In casual conversations, the possessive marker -의 is usually deleted.

- 친구(의) 책 friend’s book
- 그분(의) 책상 his desk
- 이선생님(의) 사무실 Mr. Lee’s office

Exercises

8 Suppose you cannot go to church this Sunday and your friend wants to know why. Answer the question, based on the following three reasons:
a it is snowing  
b you are very busy  
c you are too tired  

9 Answer the question 그것은 누구의 책이예요?
   a Miss Jin’s  
   b Professor Kelly’s  
   c Mr. Park’s  

10 Translate the following dialogue:
   a Since I’m tired today, I am not studying.  
   b My business is doing well these days.  
   c Since I am meeting my friend today, I’m in good spirits.  
   d Mr. Lee is very busy these days.  

11 Make up your own sentences, using the following words:
   a 잘, 덕택에, 지녀니다  
   b 지금, 못, 집에, 바빠서, 가요  
   c 이, 책, 이에요, 이선희님
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:

- express location and direction
- use negative sentences
- use informal verb ending -(으/여)요
- use sentence endings -여서요, -아(어)다
- use the conjunction of condition -(으)면 (e.g., “if” or “when”)
- use the postposition -(으)로

Dialogue 1 Mary Jin is in front of the subway station. She is looking for Seoul Railroad Station and asks a passerby for directions.

JIN: 실례합니다. 여기가 서울역입니까?
PASSERBY: 아니오. 여기는 서울역이 아닙니다. 바로 저기가 서울역입니다.
JIN: 감사합니다. 그럼, 여기는 어듭니까?
PASSERBY: 여기는 지하철역입니다.
JIN: 저쪽으로 어떻게 건너 가나요?
PASSERBY: 왼쪽으로 들어 곧장 가세요.
JIN: 감사합니다.
PASSERBY: 천만에요. 조심해서 건너 가세요.

JIN: Excuse me. Is this Seoul Railroad Station?
PASSERBY: No, it isn’t. Seoul Railroad Station is over there.
JIN: Thank you. What is this place?
PASSERBY: This is a subway station.
JIN: How can I cross over to the other side?
PASSERBY: Turn left and go straight ahead.
JIN: Thank you.
PASSERBY: You’re welcome. Be careful when you cross.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>실례합니다</td>
<td>excuse me</td>
<td>여기</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울역</td>
<td>Seoul Station</td>
<td>지하철역</td>
<td>subway station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감사합니다</td>
<td>thank you</td>
<td>저쪽으로</td>
<td>that way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니다</td>
<td>not to be</td>
<td>돌다</td>
<td>turn around</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기</td>
<td>(over) there</td>
<td>천만에요</td>
<td>you're welcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곧장</td>
<td>right away</td>
<td>왼쪽으로</td>
<td>to the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조심하다</td>
<td>be cautious</td>
<td>건너다</td>
<td>cross</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Expressing location and direction

Korean uses two sets of pointing words, one specifying location and the other direction. Each is relative to where the speaker and the hearer are situated.

Location

- **여기**  here – a place near the speaker
- **저기**  there – a place away from both the speaker and the hearer
- **거기**  there – a place near the hearer
In the diagram, 여기 is used when the speaker refers to things in a place around himself or herself, while 저기 is used when the speaker refers to things in a place away from himself or herself and from the hearer. 거기 is used when the speaker refers to things in a place near the hearer (which has to be away from himself or herself.)

**Direction**

- 이리 this way – in the direction of the speaker
- 저리 that way – in a direction away from both the speaker and the hearer
- 그리 that way – in the direction in which the hearer is headed

In the diagram, 이리 is used when the speaker specifies the direction toward which the hearer is moving or engaged in moving things, while 저리 is used when the speaker specifies a direction away from both himself or herself and the hearer. 그리 is used when the speaker specifies the direction in which the hearer is moving or engaged in moving things.

**Two ways of negating Korean sentences**

One way negates identification sentences, and the other negates all other types of verbs.

Negating identification sentences requires the complement to be turned into the subject to which the subject marker 가/여 is attached.
It is then followed by the negative verb 아니다, 아니다. This process may be summarized as follows:

**Affirmative (A = B)**

A 이/가 B 입니다  →  **Negative (A ≠ B)**

A 이/가 B 이/가 아니다

이분이 한국 사람이입니다.  
이분이 한국 사람이 아니다.  
여기가 서울입니다.  
여기가 서울이 아니다.

This person is a Korean.  
This person isn’t a Korean.  
This is Seoul.  
This isn’t Seoul.

As we saw in Lesson 1, all other types of verbs can be negated by placing the negative marker 안 before the verb.

집에 가겠어요.  
집에 안 가겠어요.  
김선생님은 지금 바쁘십니다.  
김선생님은 지금 안 바쁘십니다.

I’ll go home.  
I’m not going home.  
Mr. Kim’s busy right now.  
Mr. Kim isn’t busy right now.

**More polite questions**

You can use the following expressions to make questions more polite where asking for directions.

말씀 좀 묻겠습니다.  
여기가 시청 앞입니까?  
뭐 좀 물어봐도 될까요?

May I ask you something?  
Is this the front of City Hall?  
Would you mind if I asked you something?

**Contracted forms**

You can use the following contracted forms in casual speech.

바로 여기입니다.  
바로 여기디.  
바로 저기입니다.  
바로 저기디.

It’s right here.  
It’s right there.

**The consonant ㄹ**

This consonant in the syllable 어떻게 is carried over to the next syllable 게 and is pronounced as 어렇게. Other examples which show this carry-over in pronunciation are 이렇게, 그렇게.
Exercises

1 You are lost on the streets of Seoul. Ask a passerby how to get to the following places:

a Lotte Hotel
b the subway station
c Chongro Street

2 Suppose you are looking at a map of downtown Seoul. Ask the friend you are with where the place you are pointing to is located on the map.

a City Hall
b Capitol Building
c post office
d East Gate Market

3 Answer the following questions according to the given cue, using one of three pointer words, outlined in Expressing location and direction above:

a 미국대사관이 어디니까? (cue: hearer)
b 신라호텔이 어디니까? (cue: away)
c 백화점이 어디니까? (cue: speaker)
d 은행이 어디니까? (cue: hearer)
e 경찰서가 어디니까? (cue: speaker)

4 Name at least three public places where you as a traveler can do business in the city.

5 Make your own sentences, using the following words:

a 저쪽으로, 건너가다, 어떻게?
b 오른쪽, 둘다, 지하도, 건너가다
c 여기, 대사관, 아니다

6 You are giving someone who is learning Korean some grammar help. Correct his or her grammar.

a 거기가 지하철역가입니다.
b 여기는 안서울입니다.
c 거기가 시청가 아닙니다.
d 이산생님은 지금 바쁘시네요.
7 Translate the following dialogue:

A: Excuse me. Where’s there a police station around here?
B: It’s right over there across the street.
A: How can I cross this street? There’s so much traffic.
B: Well, you can use the underpass at the corner.
A: I see. Thanks very much.
B: You’re welcome.

8 Mr. Anderson is at City Hall, but he’s standing on the side opposite the Plaza Hotel (pronounced 플라자호텔), where he wants to get to. He encounters a high school student who does not speak any English. He notices an overpass to his left and heavy traffic on the wide streets. Write a realistic dialogue between Mr. Anderson and the high school student.

Culture point
On p. 56 you will find a map of Central Seoul. Look at the following: Seoul City Hall (1), Korea National Tourism Corporation (KNTC) (2), Sejong Cultural Center (3), Kyobo Building (4), U.S. Embassy (5), and Kyongbokkung (6). These are shown on the miniature map by Arabic numerals in ascending order. Located within walking distance are four major deluxe hotels: Chosun (7), Plaza (8), Lotte (9), and President (10). Major department stores, arcades, and “small or large” markets are also clustered in the downtown area, which provides foreigners with excellent shopping opportunities.

Dialogue 2  Mr. Anderson is lost in downtown Seoul. He asks a passerby how he can get to the U.S. Embassy

ANDERSON: 실허합니당. 길을 잃어 버렸어요. 저기가 미국대사관입니까?
PASSEBY: 아니오, 저기는 미국대사관이 아닙니다.
ANDERSON: 그럼, 미국대사관에 어떻게 갈니까?
PASSEBY: 저기 골목을 지나 가세요. 거기서 왼쪽으로 곧장 가세요.
ANDERSON: 네, 감사합니다. 여기서 멈牀니까?
PASSEBY: 걸어서 가면, 아마 시간이 많이 걸릴 거예요.
ANDERSON: 차로 가면 어떨까요?
PASSEBY: 차로 가면, 별로 안 걸려요.
ANDERSON: 아, 그래요. 그럼 택시를 타야겠어요. 아무튼 감사합니다.
PASSEBY: 천만에요.
Central Seoul
ANDERSON: Excuse me. I'm lost. Is that the U.S. Embassy?
PASSERBY: No, it isn't.
ANDERSON: Oh! How do I get there?
PASSERBY: Just go past the small side street over there.
Go straight ahead from there to your left.
ANDERSON: Thank you. Is it far from here?
PASSERBY: If you walk, it'll take you quite a while.
ANDERSON: How about by car?
PASSERBY: If you go by car, it won't take you long.
ANDERSON: Oh, I guess I'll take a taxi. Thanks anyway.
PASSERBY: You're welcome.

Vocabulary

길 street 별로 particularly
잃어 버리다 to get lost 미국대사관 U.S. embassy
골목 alley 지나가다 pass by
걸리다 to take 아마 probably
걸어서 by foot 많이 much, many
멀다 far 면 if
차로 by car 택시 taxi
타다 to ride 시간 time
감사하다 to be thankful 아무튼 anyway

Language points

Informal verb ending -아(어/여)요

The informal verb ending -아(어/여)요 is used when a speaker is already acquainted with the hearer to some extent (e.g., colleagues in the office). This ending can be used to make a statement, ask a question, or give a command. Different vowels need to be inserted, depending on the nature of the vowel used in the verb stem.

Verb stem + 아/오 → 아요: 가요, 자요, 안아요
Verb stem + 우/으/이 → 어요: 바빠요, 먹어요
Verb 하 + 여 → 해요: 일해요, 운전해요
**Informal sentence ending** -ㄹ/을 거예요

When used with a verb, the informal sentence ending -ㄹ/을 거예요 indicates some type of probability. This is an informal version of the pattern -ㄹ/을 것이예요.

저분이 선생님일 거예요. That man/woman is probably a teacher.

기차가 역에 도착할 거예요. The train’ll probably arrive at the station soon.

**Conjunction of condition or stipulation** -(으)면

The conjunction -(으)면 indicates condition (e.g., “when”), or stipulation (e.g., “if”) when attached to the present stem of a verb. (In Korean the dependent clause precedes the main clause, but in English the dependent clause can precede or follow the main clause.) The form -면 is attached to the verb stem ending in a vowel or ㄹ, but the form -(으)면 is attached to the verb stem ending in a consonant.

시간 있으면, 전화하세요. If I have time, I’ll call you.

돈이 있으면, 그것을 사겠어요. If I have money, I’ll buy it.

공부를 많이 하면, 눈이 피곤해요. When I study a lot, my eyes get tired.

There are exceptions to this rule. They are 그으면, 쉬우면, 그러면.

**Sentence ending of obligation** -아 하다

The obligatory sentence ending -아 하다 is equivalent to English auxiliaries such as “have to,” “must,” or “should.” It requires different vowel insertions depending on the nature of the vowel used in the verb stem. 아, 어, and 해 are inserted respectively, after 아 / 오 vowels and 어 / 오 / 이 vowels with a consonant ending and after the 하다 verb. But no vowel is inserted after the verb stem with a vowel ending. The tense is expressed at the end of the verb.

지금 의자에 앉아야 하겠어요. Now I’ll have to sit in the chair.

저녁을 지금 먹어야 하겠어요. I’ll have to eat supper now.
The postposition -(으)로

This postposition, attached to a noun, refers to the means with which someone does something or by which someone moves (by one's own volition or by vehicle, whether driving or not). There are other uses of -(으)로, which will be introduced later.

-로 (ending in a vowel)           -으로 (ending in a consonant)
기차로   by train         무엇으로   by what
버스로   by bus
비행기로   by plane
배로   by ship
고속버스로   by express bus

Verb stem 일

The second consonant of this verb stem becomes silent. Thus, the syllable is pronounced as 일.

Exercises

9 Assume that you are engaged in the following activities and that someone asks what you are doing. Answer the questions, using -아(어/해) 요.

a reading a newspaper
b playing tennis
c watching a movie
d gardening

10 Someone asks if you can take a trip to Italy. Answer the question by saying that you can do it if you have the following things:

a enough time
b a million dollars
c an airplane
11 One of your friends wants to spend time with you over the weekend. Tell him or her that you must stay at home because you have three things to do.

12 Tell a friend of yours that you will take a trip to Seoul by the following means:
   a ship
   b airplane
   c train

13 A stranger asks you how to get to a certain place. Answer by saying he/she should go by the following:
   a bus stop
   b bank
   c library

14 Make your own sentences, using the following words:
   a 기차, 오래, 걸리다, 서울, 가다
   b 금장, 오른쪽, 가다, 보이다
   c 모퉁이, 지나가다, 우체국, 있다

15 A Korean friend of yours is worrying about getting caught up in the traffic during the rush hour. Explain to him what kind of public transport he should use to get around.
   a taxi
   b bus
   c subway
   d limousine

16 You are supposed to meet one of your Korean friends at the back gate of a museum, where you are supposed to go on a date. Translate the following directions. Your friend will follow these from the point when she arrives at the terminal by express bus.
   a When you get off the express bus, you will see a big building straight ahead.
   b When you pass it on your left, you will see another small building. It's a museum.
   c Buy a ticket at the ticket booth.
   d Follow the center road straight to the back gate. I will be there.

17 Suppose a foreign traveler is lost in the city and asks you for help. As the traveler has a miniature map of the vicinity, guide him/her to the City Hall, using the traveler's own map.
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
- talk about a trip you’ve made
- use the honorific markers 시/세
- use the postposition -에 (place and time)
- use the existential verb 있다
- use the honorific subject case marker -께서
- use the sentence ending -이(가)기란요
- use the names of public places and modes of transport

Dialogue 1  ○ ○ Kim and Kang are talking about a trip to New York City

KIM: 주말에 어디 가세요?
KANG: 주말에 뉴욕에 갑니다.
KIM: 뉴욕이 어디 있습니까?
KANG: 여기가 뉴욕입니다.
KIM: 어떻게 뉴욕에 가십니까?
KANG: 기차로 갑니다.
KIM: 언제 집에 돌아오세요?
KANG: 다음 주말에 돌아옵니다.
KIM: 그럼, 잘 다녀오세요.

KIM: Where are you going over the weekend?
KANG: I'm going to New York City over the weekend.
KIM: Where is New York City located?
KANG: This is New York City (pointing to the city on the map).
KIM: How (lit. By what type of transport) do you go?
KANG: I go by train.
KIM: When will you come back home?
Kang: I'll come back next weekend.
Kim: (Well, then,) have a nice trip.

Vocabulary

주말 weekend 머로 by what
어디 where 집에 (to) home
있다 to be, exist 언제 when
뉴욕 New York City 다음 next
기차 train 잘 well
돌아오다 return 다녀오다 go and come back
(honorific)

Language points

The honorific markers 시/세

As explained in Lesson 3, these markers are used to indicate respect on the part of the speaker to someone who is older or who has a higher position than oneself. Thus, it is not appropriate to use these honorific markers when the speaker is the subject. Examine the following pairs of sentences.

A: 어디 가십니까? Where are you going?
B: 집에 갑니다. I'm going home.

A: 어디 가십니까? Where are you going?
B: 집에 가십시오. I'm going home.

The first response is acceptable, but the second is not.

The postposition -에 (place)

This postposition is attached directly to a place word and is followed by 가다 “to go,” 오다 “to come,” or their compound verbs. It refers to a specific destination.

집에 갑니다. (I'm) going home.
학교에 갑니다. going to school.
도서관에 갑니다. going to the library.
호텔에 갑니다. going to the hotel.
**The postposition -에 (time)**

This postposition also conveys a sense of time, when a time word precedes it. It is equivalent to such English prepositions as “at,” “on,” “in,” etc.

주말에 어디에 가세요? Where are you going over the weekend?
월말에 집에 가요. I’m going home at the end of the month.
오후에 도서관에 갑니다. I’m going to the library in the afternoon.
그 사람은 정오에 와요. He (lit. the man) is coming at noon.

**The verb of existence 있다**

The verb 있다 indicates existence, location, or possession in various contexts. Listed below are some sentences, in which the verb follows a place. In this case, the verb 있다 conveys location.

도서관은 어디에 있습니다? Where is the library?
보스턴은 여기 있습니다. Boston is located (over) here.
한국은 여기 있습니다. Korea is located (over) here.

있다 should not be confused with the verb 이다 conveying equality. The verb 이다 will be discussed in the next lesson.

**The pronoun 누구 (who)**

When 누구 takes a subject case marker -가, the second syllable -구 gets dropped.

누가 공부합니까? Who’s studying?
누가 올니까? Who’s coming?
누가 갑니까? Who’s going?

But 누구 is used with other grammatical categories such as the verb 이다 and object case markers -을/를.

이분이 누구입니까? Who’s this person?
누구를 기다리십니까? Who are you waiting for?
Exercises

1 Choose the word which does not belong to the group:

a 비행기, 기차, 배, 자전거, 호텔
b 면, 집, 주말, 연말, 월말
c 도서관, 뉴욕, 한국, 보스턴, 서울
d 도서관, 호텔, 교회, 집, 학교

2 Suppose you know that someone you are acquainted with is going to the following places. How would you respond to the question 그분 어디 가세요? You must use the postposition -에 in your answers.

a Seoul
b my hometown
c New York
d Boston

3 You are going to London over the weekend and one of your friends asks how you are going. Respond to the question, using the following:

a train
b express bus
c car
d taxi

4 A visitor is lost on the streets of Seoul. He asks you where the following places are located on the miniature map of downtown Seoul (see the map on page 56). Help this person out by answering his questions.

a City Hall
b subway station
c U.S. Embassy

5 Translate the following conversation:

A: Mr. Kim. Where are you going?
B: I'm going to the subway station.
A: Is someone coming?
B: Yes, my brother is visiting us. Tomorrow is my son's birthday.
A: Really? You must be excited.
6 You are giving some grammar help to someone who is learning Korean. Correct the grammar in these sentences.

a 누구는 서울역에 올니까?
b 서울역가 지기에 있습니까?
c 뉴욕에 기차으로 가요.
d 주마래 친구 집에 가요.
e 친구가 집에 가십니다.

7 You run into your work colleague on a Seoul street. You are curious to know why he is heading towards the British Embassy. Write a realistic dialogue which might have taken place between you and your friend.

**Culture point**
Seoul Railroad Station (pictured opposite), constructed in 1926, is a Renaissance-style building with a huge Byzantine dome. It serves as the epicenter for Korea’s land transport system, where trains travel to all the peninsula’s major cities. Some 100,000 passengers enter and leave Seoul every day. In recent years, major subway lines have been connected with the station, providing passengers with easy access to downtown Seoul.

**Dialogue 2**  
**Ki Soo Kang runs across Miss Kim on a Seoul street and asks her if she is expecting a visitor**

**KANG:** 김선생님, 어디 가세요?
**KIM:** 기차역에 갑니다.
**KANG:** 누가 올니까?
**KIM:** 예, 제 아버님께서 고향에서 오십니다.
**KANG:** 아, 그래요? 아버님 자주 오세요?
**KIM:** 아니요, 가끔 오세요. 내일이 제 생일이거든요.
**KANG:** 아, 그래요? 언제 돌아 가십니까?
**KIM:** 모레 돌아 가십니다.

**KANG:** Mr. Kim, where are you heading?
**KIM:** I'm heading towards the train station.
**KANG:** Who's coming?
**KIM:** My father's coming from my hometown.
**KANG:** Really? Does your father come frequently?
**KIM:** No. He seldom comes. He's coming because tomorrow is my birthday.

**KANG:** Really? When is he going back home?
**KIM:** He's going back the day after tomorrow.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>意義</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아버님</td>
<td>father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차역</td>
<td>train station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고향</td>
<td>hometown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자주</td>
<td>frequently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가끔</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내일</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>생일</td>
<td>birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모레</td>
<td>the day after tomorrow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Deletion of the postposition -에

The postposition -에 indicating location is generally deleted in simple sentences.

한국에 가요.  I'm going to Korea.

학교에 가요.  I'm going to school.

집에 가요.    I'm going home.

However, when attached to time words, it is not subject to deletion. The following sentences without the time postposition are ungrammatical.

주말 어디에 가세요?  Where are you going over the weekend?

월말 집에 가요.     I'm going home at the end of the month.

연말 집에 가요.     I'm going home at the end of the year.

Deletion of subject case markers

The subject case markers explained in Lesson 2 are deletable.

뉴욕 어디에 있습니다?  Where is the city of New York located?

여기 뉴욕입니다.     This place is New York.

제 친구 옵니다.      My friend is coming.

Honorific subject case marker -께서

This honorific suffix is used in place of the plain form, when an honorific noun is chosen. Using it makes one's expression even more formal and polite than simply using the honorific noun.
The sentence ending -거든 요

When it is placed at the end of the sentence, this ending indicates astonishment or delight. It also indicates a minor causal condition in a certain context, the meaning of which is used in the following:

비가 많이 왔거든요.  Because it rained a lot!
친구가 오거든요.  Because my friend’s coming!
주말에 집에 가거든요.  Because I’m going home over the weekend!

The postposition -에서

This postposition was introduced in Lesson 1 as a suffix indicating the location of an event. When it precedes the verb 오다 “to come,” it may also be used to denote the origin of an event.

어머님께서 서울에서 오셨습니다.  My mother came from Seoul.
친구들이 한국에서 왔습니다.  Friends came from Korea.
편지가 고향에서 왔어요.  A letter came from my hometown.

Honorific/non-honorific verb forms and their usage

So far, we have introduced various verb forms in a rather random fashion. We can now put these variations in perspective to present the general principles for forming them and their relationships as well. The following table shows the general rules for making up the verb forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of expression</th>
<th>Non-honorific</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statement</td>
<td>stem -(으/어) 요.</td>
<td>stem -(으) 세요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>stem -(으/어) 요?</td>
<td>stem -(으) 세요?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rule 1 If the verb stem ends in a vowel, no additional vowel ㅇ is inserted between the stem and its ending for the honorific short and long forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Short ending</th>
<th>Long ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다</td>
<td>가세요</td>
<td>가십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하다</td>
<td>하세요</td>
<td>하십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>공부하세요</td>
<td>공부하십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>보세요</td>
<td>보십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rule 2 If the verb stem ends in a consonant, the syllableARP is inserted between the stem and its ending for the non-honorific long forms. However, the verb stem ending in a vowel takes only the consonantARP which can be used as an underneath character.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Consonant ending</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Vowel ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹습니다</td>
<td>보다</td>
<td>봉니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있다</td>
<td>있습니다</td>
<td>가다</td>
<td>갑니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>않다</td>
<td>않습니까?</td>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>공부합니다?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rule 3 The short, non-honorific ending is formed by attaching the endings-(아/어/여)요 to the respective verb stems of dark (어, 음, 이)/bright (아, 오) vowels and 하. This has already been explained in Lesson 4. However, note the following exceptions to this rule:

| 이다       | be | 이에요 |
| 아니다     | not be | 아니에요 |
| 바쁘다     | busy | 바쁘요 |
| 쓰다       | write | 써요 |
| 기타리다   | wait | 기타려요 |
| 말하다     | speak | 말해요 |

Although short and long forms are both used in conversations in Modern Korean, the former is more often used in casual speech.

Rule 4 Some verb forms use the built-in honorific forms. They do not take honorific insertions -시 or -세, but yield separate lexical entries which are honorific. See page 45 for examples of these verbs.

Note: an asterisk mark (*) above and hereafter means the construction is Not Applicable (NA).
Exercises

8 Suppose someone you know very well is going to the following places. Respond to the question 그분 어디 가세요?, deleting the postposition -에 this time.

a church
b home
c station
d library

9 Tell your friend that you are going to the library at the following times:

a in the morning
b in the afternoon
c at noon
d in the evening

10 One of your roommates wants to know who is visiting you over the weekend. Answer, using the following:

a older brother
b father
c mother
d uncle

11 You had to miss a meeting last Monday and your supervisor wants to know why. Give your explanation, based on the following reasons:

a It snowed a lot.
b You overslept.
c Your friend came.
d I went home.

12 A group of visitors from different places came to see you to celebrate your birthday over the weekend. One of your friends wants to know where they all come from. Respond, using the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Honorific conjugations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>있다</td>
<td>게시다, 게세요, 게십니까?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자다</td>
<td>주무시다, 주무세요, 주무십니다.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a New York
b Johannesburg
c Sydney
d your hometown

13 Make your own sentences, using the following words:

a 한국, 내일, 형님, 에서, 오세요
b 제, 이거돈요, 월말, 생일, 이
c 지하철, 지금, 깨서, 어머님, 역, 가세요
d 지금, 가, 비, 오거돈요, 많이

14 You are giving grammar help to someone who is learning Korean. Correct the grammar in these sentences:

a 아버님을 친구 집에 가요.
b 친구에게 식당에서 점심 먹어요.
c 친구께서 식당에서 점심 먹어요.
d 편지이 서울에서 왔어요.

15 Fill in the columns for the following conjugation table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of expression</th>
<th>Non-honorific</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statement</td>
<td>자요</td>
<td>(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>주무세요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>request</td>
<td>자요</td>
<td>(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement</td>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>주무십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>잡니까?</td>
<td>(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>request</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>주무십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16 In front of Seoul Railroad Station you run across one of your Korean language teachers, who is curious to know why you are there at that point in time. Explain that your father has come from his hometown to visit you over the weekend.
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• make basic requests
• respond to an identity question in the affirmative and negative
• use the additional sets of pointing words 이것, 그것, 저것
• use the topic case marker -은/는
• use the sentence endings -이에요/아니에요, -는데요

Dialogue 1  ○ ○ Mr. Kim asks Ms. Jones about various objects typically found in an office

Kim: 이것이 무엇입니까?
Jones: 그것은 책임입니다.

Kim: 저것이 무엇입니까?
Jones: 저것은 책상입니다.
Kim: 이것은 책입니까?
Jones: 아니오. 그것은 책이 아닙니다.

Kim: What’s this?
Jones: It’s a book.
Kim: What’s that?
Jones: That’s a desk.
Kim: Is this a book?
Jones: No, it isn’t a book.
Kim: Is that a map?
Jones: No, this isn’t a map.

This is a Korean language book.

Vocabulary

이것 this thing
그것 that thing (away from
   speaker and hearer)
저것 that thing (near
   speaker only)
무엇 what
책 book
책상 desk
이다 to be
아니다 not to be
한국어 책 Korean language
      book
아니오 no
Language points

Sentence expressing an identity

The linking verb -입니/ta입니/ta, as explained in Lesson 2, is a verb that identifies the predicate of a sentence with the subject.

Identity: A (이/가) B 입니다. A is B.
 이것은 무엇입니/ta?
그것은 시계입니다.
이는 오늘 신문입니다.

What's this?
It's a clock.
This is today's newspaper.

The linking verb 아닙니다

The negative counterpart of the linking verb 입니/ta is noun + 아닙니다. This noun normally takes the subject case marker -이/가 once the noun switches from the predicate to the subject position and assumes the function of the subject of the linking verb. Thus, in this type of negative construction, the same or a different case marker may appear twice. This is called the double subject construction.

Identity: A (이/가) B 입니다 A = B
Negation: A (이/가) B (이/가) 아닙니다 A ≠ B
이것은 연필입니다. This is a pencil.
이것은 연필이 아닙니다. This isn't a pencil.
저것은 공책입니다. This is a notebook.
저것은 공책이 아닙니다. This isn't a notebook.

More pointing words

Lesson 4 introduced two sets of pointing words such as 이리, 그리, 저리, and 여기, 거기, 저기. This section introduces two remaining sets of pointing words. The basic meaning is the same as in Lesson 4.

Thing category

이것 이 “this” + 것 “thing” object near the speaker
그것 그 “that” + 것 “thing” object either near the hearer or mutually understood
저것 저 “that” + 것 “thing” object away from both the speaker and the hearer
**Person category**

이분  this person – person near the speaker
그분  that person – person either near the hearer or mutually understood
저분  that person – person away from both the speaker and the hearer

Third Person
That's not a pen. That's not a pencil (near the hearer).
This is a Korean language textbook.
This (person) (honorific) is Dr. Kim (with a doctoral degree).
That (person) (honorific) is Mr. Song.
Who's that (person) (honorific)?

Note that in conversations the final consonant of all pointing words can often be dropped, as in 이거, 저거, 그거. When the subject case maker 이 follows, it may even get contracted into -게.

이것이 ("this" near the speaker) 이게
그것이 ("that" near the hearer) 그게
저것이 ("that" away from both) 저게

**The demonstrative modifiers** 이, 그, 저

These modifiers can be combined with common nouns.

이 책상 this desk
이 연필 this pencil
저 볼펜 that ballpoint pen
그 학생 the student (near you)

**The informal ending** -이에요/아니에요

A non-honorific long ending -입니다 is often re-formed as -이에요 in an affirmative sentence and spelled this way. Women and schoolchildren tend to adopt this form, but males prefer to use its base (original) form. When the sentence ending -이에요 comes after a noun ending in a vowel, -이 is usually contracted into -예. Also, note that the negative form of this ending is -아니에요.

그것은 책임입니다.
그것은 책임이에요.
것은 책임이 아니에요.
것은 의지입니다.
Exercises

1 An American student points at various objects near you and asks you what they are. Respond to his question.

a chair
b newspaper
c dictionary
d map

2 Someone asks you what the objects are that he is pointing at. Answer his questions on the basis of the pictures shown:

a 이것은 책입니까?

b 이것은 오늘 신문입니까?

c 이것은 메모지입니까?

d 이것은 연필입니까?
3 Answer the following questions, looking at the pictures shown below:

a 저분이 경찰입니다?

b 이분이 누나입니다。

(c 그분이 남자입니다?

(pointing to the person on the left)

4 A toddler asks you to identify the pictures she has. Respond to her question, using -이/예요.

a  

b
Culture point

Personal relationships in a Korean office setting are vertical. They are expressed in job-related titles, ranging from the president (사장), director (전무), managing director (상무), division chief (부장), section chief (과장), assistant section chief (대리), to the new employee (신입사원). Every staff member addresses a colleague in junior rank by his or her last name with a job title. But one also addresses a senior colleague by his or her last name with a job title and the honorific suffix -님. At a workplace, a foreigner may notice that staff members low in rank are conspicuously submissive to staff members high in rank. Thus, it is not unusual for a senior staff member to request a junior staff member to provide some type of service, including requests for office supplies or objects. It is also notable that the role which a female employee assumes is usually considered minor compared with the role played by a male employee, although her higher rank can reverse this role relationship.

Dialogue 2  Mr. Kim is looking for some office supplies and asks a junior staff member, Miss Lee, to bring one for him

KIM: 저기에 스테플러 있어요?
LEE: 아니요. 여기 없습니다.
   그것은 업방에 있는데요.
KIM: 그럼, 클립은 있어요?
LEE: 예, 여기 있어요.
KIM: 이리 몇 개 좀 가져다 주겠어요?
LEE: 네, 그렇게 하겠습니다.
   잠깐 기다리십시오.
   (A moment later)
LEE: 자 여기 있습니다.
KIM: 고마워요.
LEE: 천만에요.
Kim: Is there a stapler?
Lee: No, it's not here.
    It's in the next room.
Kim: Do you have any paper clips?
Lee: Yes, I have some here.
Kim: Would you please bring several here for me?
Lee: Yes, I will do so (that way).
    Just a moment, please.
    (A moment later)
Lee: Here they are.
Kim: Thank you, Miss Lee.
Lee: You're quite welcome.

Vocabulary

스테플러  stapler  줄  (polite marker)
있어요  have  그렇지  that way or so
없습니다  not have  잠깐  for a moment
옆방  next room  천만에요  you're quite
자 여기 있습니다  here it is  당신을  welcome
고맙다  to be thankful  몇 개  some
클립  paper clips  가져다 주다  fetch

Language points

**Topic case marker -은/는**

We have already studied the subject case marker -이/가, which indicates the subject of a sentence. However, when the subject is introduced as a new topic in comparison with something previously mentioned in the immediate sentences, the topic case marker -은 is attached to a subject ending in a consonant, and -는 is attached to a subject ending in a vowel. The meaning of the topic case marker is roughly equivalent to the English phrase “as for . . . .”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonant</th>
<th>Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>창문은  window</td>
<td>지도는  map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분필을  chalk</td>
<td>의자는  chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책은  book</td>
<td>지우개는  eraser</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The topic case marker can be contracted to - 건, when pointing words precede it.

* 이것은 *이거는 이건
* 그것은 *그거은 그건
* 저것은 *저거은 저건

**The verb** 있습니다 (있다)

This verb is not always translated to express either location (with a place) or existence, as explained in the previous lesson. There are other English translations derived from it such as “There is/are . . .” and “Do you have . . . ?”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>여기에 연필 있어요.</td>
<td>Here is a pen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거기에 지우개 있어요?</td>
<td>Is there an eraser near you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지우개 있어요?</td>
<td>Do you have an eraser with you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앞방에 한국어 사전</td>
<td>Is there a Korean language dictionary in the next room?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국어 사전 있어요?</td>
<td>Do you have a Korean dictionary with you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The opposite form of this verb is 없다, which means either “There is/are not . . . ,” or “Someone does not have something.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>거기에 자 있어요?</td>
<td>Is there a ruler (near you)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니오. 여기에 없어요.</td>
<td>No, it isn’t here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자 있어요?</td>
<td>Do you have a ruler with you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니오. 자 없어요.</td>
<td>No, I don’t have one.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The postposition** - 에

This postposition expresses existence when it is used with such existential verbs as 있다, 계시다, 없다, 많다 (“to be many or much”), and 살다 (“to live”). The meaning of this postposition amounts to “at” or “in.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Expression</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>그분이 사무실에 계십니다.</td>
<td>He/She is in the office.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책상이 교실에 있습니다.</td>
<td>Desks are in the classroom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책상이 교실에 없습니다.</td>
<td>There are no desks in the classroom.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
There are lots of people in the lounge.
Mr. Hong is in the restaurant.

**The sentence ending** -는데요

This ending, which is attached to the verb stem of the sentence, expresses the meaning “but,” and invites some comment or request.

여기에 한국어 사전이 없는데요. There is no Korean language dictionary here, but . . .
그분은 여기에 안 계시는데요. He/she is not here, but . . .
사무실에 아무도 없는데요. There is no one in the office, but . . .

**Exercises**

5 You have bought some office supplies such as a ruler, paper clips, a pen, and an eraser at the stationery store. Your Korean officemate keeps asking what you have bought. Respond to these questions, using the topic case marker -은/는.

a 차 있어요?
b 한국지도 있어요?
c 클립 있어요?
d 공책 있어요?

6 Someone asks you whether a series of objects is nearby. Respond to these questions, based on the pictures given below.

a 거기에 연필 있어요?
Imagine you are answering the phone in an office while the following personnel are out for morning break. You want to tell the caller where they are at the moment.

a Miss Lee is at the restaurant.
b Section Chief Thompson is in the lounge.
c The secretary, Miss Hong, is at the snack bar.

One of your senior colleagues asks whether you have the following office supplies which he can borrow, but you don’t have any of them. However, you say that you don’t mind looking for them. In this situation, how would you respond to his questions? For new words, refer to the English–Korean glossary at the back of the book.

a Scotch tape
b stapler
c scissors

Ask one of your colleagues to bring the following office supplies for you. For new words, look at the English–Korean glossary at the back of the book.

a ballpoint pen
b memo pad
c paper clips
d ink

10 Answer the following questions, according to what you have in your office or room.

a 한국 지도 있어요?
b 붙펜 있어요?
c 봉투 있어요?
d 언제 신문 있어요?
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• read a Korean menu and order dishes
• use the past tense (plain and honorific forms)
• use the suggestive endings - 설까요?/-(으)시다 (i.e., “Shall we...?” /“Let’s...”)
• use the object case marker -을/를
• use the emphatic marker -도
• use the less polite informal ending -지요
• use Korean numbers (1-100)

Dialogue 1 ☘ Mr. Kim and Miss Park talk about going out to lunch at a Korean restaurant downtown

김: 박사님, 점심(식사) 하셨어요?
박: 아니요. 아직 안 했습니다.
김: 그럼, 밖에서 점심 같이 하실까요?
박: 네, 그러시시다. 어디가 좋겠습니까?
김: 구내식당이 어떻겠습니까?
    구내식당은 값이 싸고 음식이 팬핑습니다.
박: 좋습니다. 그리 갑시다.

김: Miss Park, have you had lunch (meal) yet?
帕克: No. I haven’t.
김: Well, shall we have lunch outside together?
帕克: Certainly. Which place would be good to go to?
김: How about going to the refectory? The refectory is cheap and the food is OK.
帕克: It sounds good. Let’s go there.
Vocabulary

점심하다  have lunch (plain)  구내식당  refectory
식사하다  have meals (honorific)  어렇다  (be) how
어직도  yet  값이 싸다  cheap
밖에서  outside  움식  meal
같이  together  펜팅다  OK

Language points

Past tense

The Korean past tense consists of a verb stem and an insertion (었,았,엇) between the verb stem (or plus the honorific -시 place within the stem) and the ending.

Plain form  
임(verb stem) + 다(ending)  
임 + 있 + 다

Honorific form  
임오 + 시(honorific) + 다(ending)  
임오시 + 있 + 다

There are three rules that change the insertion of the past tense marker.

When the final vowel of the verb stem is -아/오, it takes -았

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb stem</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다</td>
<td>왔습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오다</td>
<td>왔습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보다</td>
<td>보았습니다/봤습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋다</td>
<td>좋습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많다</td>
<td>많습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the final vowel is any other vowel, it takes -었

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb stem</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>기다리다</td>
<td>기다렸습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰다</td>
<td>썼습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우다</td>
<td>배웠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치다</td>
<td>가르쳤습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹었습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The verb -하다 takes the insertion -었

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb stem</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>식사하다</td>
<td>식사했어요 (하겠어요)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>공부했어요 (하겠어요)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋아하다</td>
<td>좋아했어요 (하겠어요)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The suggestion ending -실까요?

This ending is equivalent to English suggestion forms “Shall we...?” or “Shall I...?” The Korean form is obtained by adding the ending -실까요 to the verb stem.

여기 앉으실까요? Shall we sit over here?
여기서 기다리실까요? Shall we wait over here?
같이 도서관에 가실까요? Shall we go to the library together?

Another suggestion ending -(ㅂ)시다

Although this ending is very similar to the one above, it is used to make a suggestion or proposal stronger. The meaning of this ending is equivalent to the English suggestion form “Let’s...” The consonant ㅂ is added to 시다 after the verb stem ending in a vowel, but -움시다 is taken after the verb stem ending in a consonant.

접심 밖에서 합시다. Let’s have lunch outside.
총사 한잔 합시다. Let’s have a cup of black tea.
의자에 앉으시다. Let’s sit on the chair.

The object case marker -을/를

This particle, attached to a transitive verb, indicates the object case of the noun. -을 is added after a noun ending in a consonant, whereas -를 is added after a noun ending in a vowel. This object case marker is often deleted in speech.

커피(를) 마셨어요? Did you have coffee?
텔레비전(을) 볼어요? Did you watch TV?
오늘 신문(을) 읽었어요? Did you read today’s newspaper?
The coordinate conjunction - 고

This conjunction is used to connect two clauses or phrases and is equivalent to “and” in English. In conjoining sentences the subject of one sentence may be different from that of another, although they may share a single topic.

이 식당은 크고 좋군요. This restaurant is big and good.
구내식당은 깨끗하고 The refectory is clean and the
음식값이 싸요. food is cheap.
오늘은 바람이 불고 비가 와요. Today is windy and rainy.

Exercises

1 Someone asks you what you did last weekend. Respond, basing your answers on the following activities:

a read a newspaper
b went to the movie theater
c studied Korean

2 You want to suggest to one of your colleagues that you both engage in the following activities during lunch hour. How would you do so?

a have lunch outside
b have a cup of tea
c go to the supermarket

3 Make a stronger suggestion for the activities used in 2, using the ending -(으)시다.

4 You are curious to know what Miss Lee did over the long weekend holiday. Ask her in Korean whether she did the following things, deleting the object case marker:

a went on a date
b watched TV
c traveled around

5 One of your colleagues asks you if you have had lunch yet, but you have not. Respond to his question by suggesting that you both have lunch at the following places:
a cafeteria  
b Restaurant Sinra  
c Damijung

6 One of your friends asks you why you have been frequenting the Restaurant Sinra lately. You want to explain that it is clean and the prices are cheap. How would you say this in Korean?

7 A few people in your office are wondering where to go for lunch. Suggest to them that the following places might be good to try out:

a refectory  
b snack bar  
c Korean House

8 Translate the following into Korean:

A: Have you had lunch yet?  
B: No, I haven't.  
A: Shall we go out to lunch together?  
B: Certainly.  
A: Would the refectory be a good place to go?  
B: Yes. It's a big place and it's very cheap.

Culture point
A variety of Korean restaurants are scattered throughout downtown Seoul as well as other places. Most of them specialize in serving certain kinds of meals, ranging from fire-burned meats (e.g., Pulgogi and Kalbi) to Kimpap (rice and mixed ingredients rolled with green larva [edible seaweed]). A foreigner not familiar with Korean food may give it a try by dining at a restaurant which serves barbecued or wooden charcoal-grilled meats such as marinated beef and beef ribs. The prices of these menu items may seem somewhat expensive to the first-time diner, but he or she is sure to find them worth the money. It is a good idea for a group of people (or at least a party of two) to dine together at the Pulgogi House (the name of a restaurant), since many restaurants require two servings of Pulgogi and Kalbi to be ordered. While Pulgogi is being served, a bowl of rice and six or seven different side dishes may accompany it. A tip is not necessary at most restaurants, unless otherwise indicated.
Dialogue 2  Mr. Kim and Miss Park enter a restaurant and order a couple of dishes. After enjoying the meal, they pay the check at the front counter.

(Conversation)

Mr. Kim: Good afternoon. I would like to order.
Waiter: Please come right in. Please sit over here.
Park/Kim: Thank you.
Waiter: What would you like to have?
Park: I'll have Bibimpap. Mr. Kim, what would you like?
Kim: I'll also have Bibimpap.
Park: Waitress, please bring us two Bibimpap.
Waiter: Certainly. (Yes, sir.)

(After the meal)

Kim: Waitress, please bring me the check (over here).
Waiter: Here it is.
Kim: Miss Park, I'm buying lunch for you today.
Park: Not at all. It's my turn.
Kim: No, no. Please buy me lunch next time. I'll treat you today.

Vocabulary

어서  quickly
감사합니다  thank you
무엇(을)  what
dlld  take
차례 (one's) turn
내다  pay, (or in this context) treat
제산서 guest check
 아주머니  waitress (married)
Language points

The topic case marker -은/는

This particle indicates an implied contrast or comparison with the information previously mentioned in a sentence. Its meaning is equivalent to the English phrase “as for...” Contrast the following pair of sentences.

저 비빔밥 하지요. I'll have Pibimbap.
저는 불고기 백반 하지요. As for me, I'll have the Pulgogi dinner.

The first sentence simply states the fact as it is. The second sentence, however, implies the covert message, “although I am not sure what you are going to order, I am going to order a Pulgogi dinner.” Note that the topic case marker can replace the subject and object markers (namely -가/이, -을/를).

점심 식사(를) 하셨어요? Have you had lunch yet?
점심 식사는 하셨어요? As for lunch, have you had it yet?

The emphatic marker -도

This particle indicates “also” and “too,” and can be attached to almost any word in a sentence. It replaces the subject and object particles.

제가 가겠습니다. I'll go.
저도 가겠습니다. I'll go also.
저는 불고기 백반을 하지요. As for me, I'll have the Pulgogi dinner.
저도 불고기 백반을 하지요. As for me, I'll have the Pulgogi dinner also.
Less polite informal ending -지오

This sentence ending is used informally in sentences of question, statement, and suggestion, which usually invite the listener’s confirmation or agreement. The English equivalent for this ending is “..., isn’t it?,” “..., aren’t you?” etc.

As for me, I’ll have Wonton soup, won’t I?

He (lit. that person) is a Korean, isn’t he?

Please sit over here, won’t you?

Korean numbers (1–100)

Korean employs two kinds of cardinal numbers: native Korean and Sino-Korean numbers. The native Korean cardinal numbers (1–100) are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하나</td>
<td>one person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>둘</td>
<td>two persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>셋</td>
<td>three persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넷</td>
<td>four persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯</td>
<td>five persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯</td>
<td>six persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱</td>
<td>seven persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟</td>
<td>eight persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉</td>
<td>nine persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열</td>
<td>ten persons</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The native Korean cardinal numbers 하나, 둘, 셋, 넷, 스물 are shortened when they are placed before a noun such as a countable noun (person or thing).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean numbers</th>
<th>Number + count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하나</td>
<td>한분 one person/한개 one piece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>둘</td>
<td>두분 two persons/두개 two pieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>셋</td>
<td>세분 three persons/세개 three pieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넷</td>
<td>네분 four persons/네개 four pieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물</td>
<td>스무분 twenty persons/스무개 twenty pieces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The irregular verb 들다

This verb contains an honorific form and means “take” or “eat” when used in a situation where someone is eating. This final consonant -을 is dropped when followed by the consonant 알.

식사 많이 드세요.
할머님은 식사를 많이 드십니다. Please eat a lot of food.

My grandmother eats a lot of food.

The contracted form 줄

The original, full form is 무엇을 and consists of a wh- (e.g., “what”) word and the object case marker. The consonant 알 is dropped before a vowel, resulting in the form 줄. This form can also be further contracted to one word 줄 in colloquial language settings.

무엇을 드시겠어요? What would you like?
무엇 줄 드시겠어요? What would you like?
줄 드시겠어요? What would you like?

Some useful idiomatic expressions

식사 하셨어요? 커피 하셨어요?
이번에 내 차례입니다.
이번에 누구 차례지요?
이번에는 내가 내겠습니까.

Have you had a meal?
Had you had a coffee?
This is my turn.
Whose turn is it?
This time I will treat (you).

Exercises

9 Imagine you have stepped into a local Korean restaurant. A waitress dressed in a traditional Korean costume greets you and asks what dish you would like to order. Respond to her question, ordering one dish.

10 When a friend of yours has ordered a Pulgogi dinner and you want to order the same, what would you say to the waitress?

11 Answer the following questions, using the additional information supplied.

a 줄 드시겠어요? (cold oriental noodle with hot sauce)
b 냉면 몇 그릇 (how many bowls?) 시키겠어요? (two)
c 몇 분이세요? (three)
12 When a friend of yours has ordered 비빔밥 and you want to order 갈비탕, what would you say to the waiter?

13 Yong Chul Kim, a Korean colleague in your office, has treated you to dinner many times. Now you want to treat him in return. Insist that it's your turn to take him out.

14 Respond to the following questions:
   a 아침식사 하셨어요?
   b 어디서 저녁식사 하시겠어요?
   c 무엇을 시키겠어요?

15 Translate the following into Korean:
   A: Please come right in. How many are there in your party?
   B: We are a party of two.
   A: What would you like to order?
   B: We'll order one Pulgogi dinner and one Wonton soup.
   A: Please wait a moment.

16 You are giving grammar help to someone who is learning Korean. Correct the grammar of these sentences:
   a 철화씨하고 오늘 회사에 출근하지 않았다.
   b 불고기 두개 주세요.
   c 식사 많이 들세요.
   d Goldsmith 씨가도 김밥을 시켰어요.

17 You've got some extra money and you think that it would be a good idea to buy dinner for your girlfriend, Young Ja. How would you suggest buying dinner for her?

18 You want a waiter to bring the following dishes for you and your company. How would you order them?
   a Pulgogi dinner
   b rice and beef with mixed vegetables and hot paste
   c Wonton soup

19 Reading passage Mr. Goldsmith and Miss Kim work together in an office and they very often go out to lunch nearby. One day she takes him out to a special place for lunch, but he thinks that the lunch he had wasn't so great. Try to figure out what kind of problem he had with his lunch.

어느 날 미스 김은 Goldsmith씨를 좋은 한국식당으로 데리고 갔다. 미스 김은 비빔밥을 시켰고, Goldsmith씨는 비빔냉면을 시켰다. 식당 음식은 깔끔 하고 맛이 있었다. 그러나, Goldsmith씨에게는 비빔냉면은 너무 매웠다. 그래서, 다 먹지 않았다.
Key words

한국 식당 Korean restaurant
냉면 cold noodles
비빔밥 rice with mixed vegetables and hot paste
.netflix骏 di
시키다 order

불고기 백반
Dinner with Marinated Beef
갈비(일인분)
Marinated Short Beef Ribs
갈비탕
Short Beef Ribs Soup
냉면
Cold Noodles with Hot Paste
비빔밥
Rice with Mixed Vegetables and Hot Paste
Making an appointment

By the end of this lesson you should be able to:

• Make an appointment with friends
• decline an offer
• tell the time
• learn the conjunctions -는데, -지만, -ㄴ(은)후에
• learn the noun modifier -ㄴ(은)
• learn the postposition -하고

Dialogue 1

Mr. Kim and Miss Johnson work in the same office. Since Miss Johnson is learning Korean, she often takes the opportunity to try out her Korean by asking Mr. Kim lots of simple questions. One morning, she asks him what he did last night.

존슨: 어제 저녁에 무엇 하셨어요?
감: 친구 집에 갔어요.
존슨: 친구 집에서 무엇 하셨어요?
감: 텔레비전 봤어요.
존슨: 아니요. 저는 야구 좋아해야요. 텔레비전에서 무슨 프로그램 보셨어요?
감: 미식축구 봤는데, 아주 재미있었어요.
존슨: 저도 미식축구 좋아하세요?
존슨: 아니요. 저는 야구 좋아해야요. 미식축구는 가끔 보지만, 별로 안 좋아해야요.

Vocabulary

| 저녁 | night or evening |
| 친구 집 | friend’s house |
| 텔레비전 | TV |
| 미식축구 | American football |
| 가끔 | sometimes |
| 별로 | particularly |
Language points

Types of Korean verb

There are four types of verb in Korean. These are action verbs, adjectival verbs, existential verbs, and linking verbs.

Action verbs

These indicate an action or movement performed by the grammatical subject of a sentence.

보다 see  집에서 텔레비전 보어요.  (I) watched TV at home.

먹다 eat  식당에서 점심 먹어요.  (I) had lunch in the restaurant.

Adjectival verbs

These indicate the quality or the condition of the grammatical subject, and are equivalent to English predicate adjectives (e.g., “be good”).

좋다 good  날씨가 좋어요.  The weather is good.

바쁘다 busy  김선생은 오늘 바빠요.  Mr. Kim is busy today.

많다 many/much /a lot of  저녁 시간은 많아요.  (I) have a lot of free time at night.

Existential verbs

These indicate existence, location, or possession. This kind of verb is likely to be translated into English sentences such “Something exists,” “Someone or something is located in a place,” “Someone has something.”
Linking verbs

This kind of verb links a subject with its predicate, indicating equality or identification. It is often called a copula verb.

이다  be  이것은 책이다.  This is a book.
아니다  not be  그것은 한국지도가 아닙니다.  That is not a map of Korea.

The conjunction -는데

This conjunction is used only with an action verb and the verb 었다. Its meaning can be rendered as “and,” “but,” etc., depending on the context in which it is used.

어제 저녁에 텔레비전 봤는데, 별로 재미 없었어요.  I watched TV last night, but it wasn’t that interesting.
신라 식당에서 점심 먹었는데, 음식 맛이 편찮았어요.  I had lunch in Restaurant Shinra, but the food was good.
미스리 사무실에 있는데, 만나시겠어요?  Miss Lee is in her office, and would you like to see her?
요즘은 개인 지도하는데, 아주 힘들어요.  These days I am tutoring, but it’s very hard work.

The conjunction -지만

The contrastive conjunction -지만 is used with any verb to connect two clauses that stand in contrast to each other. English equivalents for the Korean conjunction -지만 are “although” and “but.”

그 식당은 값이 비싸지만, 가졌어요.  That restaurant is expensive, but I’ll go there (anyway).
The noun modifier -

In Korean, the noun modifier functions in the same way as an English adjective. Noun modifiers, usually derivable from descriptive verbs, are put before the nouns they modify. In this case descriptive verbs are changed into noun modifiers by attaching the suffix -
 to the verb stem. Noun modifiers derived from action verbs and the verb of existence will be dealt with in Lesson 11.

| neat cheap | 산 물건을 사겠어요. | I'll buy the cheap merchandise. |
| 크다 big | 큰 식당은 깨끗해요. | A big restaurant is clean. |
| 좋다 good | 좋은 좋은 책을 산어요. | John bought a good book. |

Exercises

1 Underline the verbs in the following sentences and group them according with the four types explained earlier in the lesson.

a 제 동생은 어제 저녁에 텔레비전을 봤어요.
b 이분이 홍선생님이십니다.
c 저 건물을 뒤에 지하철역이 있어요.
d 제 친구는 돈이 많아요.

2 Someone asks you about the movie you watched on TV last night. You want to tell them that it was good, but too long. Respond, using -는데.

3 You went to a newly opened restaurant in your neighborhood. Your friend wants to know how it was. Respond, saying that it was good, but the food was a bit expensive.

4 A colleague asks you what you did at home last night. Respond to his question, assuming that you were engaged in the activities listed below. For new words, look at the English–Korean Glossary at the back of the book.
a read a book
b watched a movie on TV
c did nothing

5 Study the following pairs of sentences which make direct contrasts. Give their Korean equivalents, using the conjunction -지만.

a I studied hard, but I don't understand the material well.
b I eat a lot, but I'm not fat.
c This merchandise is cheap, but of a good quality.

6 Fill in the blank with appropriate changes in the adjectival verbs:

a (좋다 : ) 집은 값이 비싸요.
b 명동에는 (크다 : ) 식당이 많아요.
c 그 가게에서는 (비싸다 : ) 바지만 맛아요.

7 Respond to each question in Korean, based on your real activity schedule:

a 오늘 저녁에 무엇 하세요?
b 어제 저녁에 텔레비전에서 영화 봤어요?
c 내일 저녁에 식사 약속이 있어요?

Culture point
Koreans, unlike Americans and Europeans, rarely make social or business appointments well in advance. An appointment is usually made a couple of days or some hours prior to the actual event, and foreigners accustomed to the Western appointment system may find it difficult to adapt to the Korean style. One major reason for leaving short notice lies in a desire to avoid making excuses for missing other, more important business which may surface at a later point. That is, it is potentially face-saving. For example, a junior staff member might be thrust into a situation where he has to comply with his superior's request to do some business with him, although the request conflicts with his prior engagement. Thus, many Koreans feel more comfortable responding to appointments in the order in which they are arranged.

Dialogue 2  One afternoon Mr. Kim asks Ms. Johnson if she has time to go out for dinner in a cozy restaurant downtown

김: 존슨 씨 오늘 저녁에 시간 있어요?
존슨: 오늘 저녁에요? 오늘 저녁은 안 되겠어요.
      제 친구하고 약속이 있어요.
김: 그럼, 내일 저녁은 펴채요?
손님: 내일은 좋아요.
김: 우리 저녁식사 같이 할까요?
손님: 좋아요. 어디가 좋겠어요?
김: 명동에 있는 한가람 식당에 가요.
손님: 그럼, 내일 일이 끝난 후에 5시에 전화하세요.
김: 그렇게 하겠습니다.

Vocabulary

시간 time 
하고 with 
약속 appointment 
저녁식사 supper 
명동 Myeongdong 
한가람 식당 Restaurant Hankaram 
일 work 
전화하다 make a phone call 
끝나다 finish (intransitive) 
내일 tomorrow

Language points

The subordinate conjunction - 뒤(은) 후에

The temporal conjunction - 뒤(은) 후에 is used to connect two clauses. It is compared to the English expression “after something happens/has happened.” - 뒤 후에 is inserted after the stem of a verb ending in a vowel, but -은 후에 is inserted after one ending in a consonant.

공부를 많이 한 후에 극장에 갑니다. 
일이 끝난 후에 다방에 갑니다.

After studying a lot, let’s go to the cinema.
After work, let’s go to the tearoom.

Note that this conjunction can be used as if it had a temporal meaning “after” or “later.”

한 시간 후에 도서관에 가겠습니다.

I’ll go to the library one hour later.
**Echoing the question in Korean**

To repeat a word or phrase uttered by another person, attach the ending -요 to it. This is done to ascertain what the hearer may have heard that he or she is not sure about. Or one may need a moment to digest what has been said.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>내일 서울에 갑니까?</td>
<td>Do you go to Seoul tomorrow?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울예요?</td>
<td>Do you mean Seoul?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한국 대통령이 대화에 참가한가요?</td>
<td>Does Korea’s President go to Russia?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소련예요?</td>
<td>Do you mean Russia?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내일 저녁에 시간이 있어요?</td>
<td>Do you have free time tomorrow night?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내일 저녁예요?</td>
<td>Do you mean tomorrow night?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The verb stem -는**

This particle is attached after the stem of the verbs 있다/없다, and identifies the location of a place.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>명동에 있는 식당은 괜찮어요.</td>
<td>The restaurants in Myeongdong are mostly clean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기 있는 모자는 내 것이다.</td>
<td>The hat over there is mine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sino-Korean numbers (1–100)**

Lesson 7 introduced a system of native Korean numbers. Another system – Sino-Korean numbers (1–100) – is introduced here. They are used when telling the time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>영</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>일</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>이</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>삼</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>사</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>오</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>육</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>칠</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>팔</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>구</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>십</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>이십</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>삼십</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>사십</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>오십</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>육십</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>칠십</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>팔십</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>구십</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>백</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reading hours and minutes

When reading the hour, native Korean numbers are used with the time counter -시. Bear in mind that native Korean numbers 1 through 4 lose their underneath consonant when placed before the time counter.

To say “half-past” an hour, the word 반 is added right after the hourly unit.

However, when reading minutes, Sino-Korean numbers are used along with the word 분.

Another way is to read time when the long hand of the clock points anywhere between 45 and 59 minutes. In this case, the pattern _시 _분전 is used. In this expression, the word 전 means “before.”

 지금 몇 시입니까?  What time is it now?
지금 한 시입니다.  It’s one o’clock now.
지금 여섯 시 반입니다.  It’s six thirty now.
지금 일곱 시 십분 전입니다.  It’s ten to seven now.
The postposition -하고

This postposition is attached after a noun, and is comparable to “with” in English.

오늘 저녁에 친구하고 극장에 가요.  
내일은 동생하고 도서관에 가겠어요.  
I’ll go to the cinema with my friend tonight.  
I’ll go to the library with my brother tomorrow.

Exercises

8 You wish to go on a date with Miss Chang, a colleague in your office, and you want to know when she will be free. Ask her whether she will be available at the following times:

a tomorrow afternoon  
b tonight  
c at lunchtime

9 Miss Jin, another colleague in the office, wishes to go to the movies with you after work, but you have a busy schedule lined up. What would you say to decline her offer?

10 Read the time on the clocks below:

a b c

11 One of your friends tries to lure you to go out to the movies tonight. You want to tell him that you can make time for him after the following events. What would you say?

a after an exam is over  
b after work is done

12 You want to tell a friend to meet you at a restaurant at the following places. What would you say?

a at Myeongdong  
b at Chongro  
c at Kwanghwamoon
13 Ask a friend to call you at home to set up your next appointment at the following times:

a 3 P.M.  b 4:15 P.M.  c 9:10 A.M.

14 One of your friends asks you if you will be free this Saturday afternoon. Tell him that you have a previous engagement with the following people at the times listed:

a with your younger brother at 10 in the morning
b with your mother at noon for lunch
c with friends in the neighborhood in the evening

15 Respond to each question, based on your real-life schedule:

a 몇 시에 주무십니까?
b 아침 몇 시에 일어나십니까?
c 점심을 몇 시에 드십니까?
d 직장에서 몇 시에 퇴근하십니까?

16 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What did you do last night?
B: I went to the movie theater with my friends.
A: Was the movie interesting?
B: Well, it was, but it was very short.

17 Reading passage Miss Johnson visited Mr. Lee’s apartment where they watched a World Cup soccer game on TV. At that time the Korean team was competing against the Spanish team, and it ended in a draw. Although the game itself was very interesting, they didn’t feel good afterwards. Try to figure out what made them feel uncomfortable at the end of the game.

Johnson 씨는 여제 저녁에 친구 미스터 리 아파트에 갔다. 거기서 미스터 리하고 텔레비전에서 World Cup 축구경기를 보았다. 그 때 한국팀이 스페인팀과 시합을 하고 있었다. 그 경기는 재미있었지만 무승부로 끝났다. 경기가 끝난 후 많은 선수들이 다쳐서, 두 사람은 기분이 별로 안 좋았다.

Key words

아파트 apartment  시합하다 compete
텔레비전 TV 경기 game, match
축구 soccer 무승부 draw
시계 watch 끝나다 finish
t�� team 다치다 get hurt
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:

- take a taxi
- communicate with a Korean driver regarding destination and direction
- pay a fare, using Korean money
- use the conjunctions 
- use the sentence endings 
- use the verb 
- compound verbs 

Dialogue 1  Edward Moon, a designer at the American Toy Company, is visiting Seoul on a business trip. After taking a cab at the taxi-stand in front of City Hall, he enjoys a chat with a Korean taxi driver.

운전기사: 어디까지 가세요?
손님: 동대문까지 갑니다.
운전기사: 여기 타세요.
손님: 네, 감사합니다.
운전기사: 손님은 동대문 어디까지 가실니까?
손님: 동대문 지하철역까지 갑니다.
운전기사: 여기서 동대문까지는 멀어요?
운전기사: 그림요. 차로 40분 정도 걸려요.
운전기사: 그런데, 저희 큰 건물들은 무슨 건물이에요?
운전기사: 오른쪽에 있는 건물은 교보빌딩이고, 원쪽에 있는 건물은 세종문화회관이에요.
손님: 아, 그래요.
**Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>음천 기사</th>
<th>up to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>동대문</td>
<td>Dongdaemoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타다</td>
<td>get on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손님</td>
<td>passenger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>운전기사</td>
<td>driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지하철역</td>
<td>subway station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>멀다</td>
<td>far</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아마도</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아저씨</td>
<td>driver, uncle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 40분 | 40 minutes |
| 정도 | about (roughly) |
| 걸리다 | take |
| 건물 | building |
| 오른쪽 | right side |
| 교보빌딩 | Building Kyobo |
| 왼쪽 | left side |
| 세종문화회관 | King Sejong |
| (운전기사) | Cultural Center |

**Language points**

**The particle -에서(부터)**

This particle, attached to words of time or place, indicates a starting point in time, or a place from which a physical movement begins.

| 아침 일곱 시부터 공부합니다. | Let’s study from nine o’clock in the morning. |
| 몇 시부터 공부를 하겠습니다? | From when will you study? |
| 내일부터 아주 바쁘다. | I’m going to be busy from tomorrow. |

**The particle -까지**

This particle indicates “until,” “up to,” or “as far as,” when preceded by a time expression or a place word.

| 어디까지 가십니까? | Up to where do you go? |
| 남산까지 갑니다. | I go up to Mt. Namsan. |
| 두시 반까지 집에 오세요. | Please come to my home by 2:30. |

**The correlational pattern -에서(부터) -까지**

The above two particles can be combined to form a correlational pattern -에서(부터) -까지. Its meaning is equivalent to the English correlational phrase “from ... to ...”
We had a meeting from 3 to 5.

It rains from today to tomorrow.

It takes one hour by airplane from Seoul to Pusan.

**The verb -걸리다**

This verb means “takes” in English, when followed by time-related nouns. This verb usually accompanies a certain mode of transportation (e.g., “by car,” “by air,” “by taxi,” “by bus,” etc.).

동대문에서 시청까지 차로 몇 시간 걸립니까?

한 시간 걸립니다.

여기서 시청 앞까지 차로 몇 분 걸립니까?

10분 정도 걸립니다.

How many hours does it take by car from Dongdaemoon to City Hall?

It takes one hour.

How many minutes does it take by car from here to City Hall?

It takes about 10 minutes.

**The coordinate conjunction -이고**

This conjunction is a subtype of the conjunction -고 introduced in Lesson 7. As explained earlier, it conjoins two clauses, phrases, or even sentences which illustrate a series of events. However, the conjunction -이고 is used only when the first sentence takes the linking verb -이다.

This is a book and that’s a notebook.

That’s an American and this is a Korean.

**The degree word 정도**

This word, coming after words of time, means denotes “about,” or “around” in English.

He will come after about an hour.

About 30 minutes will do.
Exercises

1 Suppose you take a taxi and the driver asks your destination. Tell him that you are going to the following places:
   a Yongsan Subway Station
   b U.S. Embassy
   c Kimpo Airport

2 Suppose you take a taxi at Chongro and are heading for Dongdaemoon. You are afraid that you may not get there in time for the meeting. Ask the driver how long the journey will take.

3 One of your friends asks you how long it will take him by taxi from City Hall to the following places in Seoul. How would you respond?
   a to Chongak (10 minutes)
   b to Dongdaemoon Stadium (30 minutes)
   c to U.S. Embassy (about 50 minutes)

4 A business acquaintance who lives in Pusan asks you how long it will take him to go from Pusan to Seoul. Tell him that it will take him different amounts of time, depending on what type of transportation he takes:
   a five hours by train
   b one hour by airplane
   c four and half hours by express bus

5 You are pointing to one object near you and another away from you. How would you indicate the following pairs of objects in Korean?
   a pen and pencil
   b computer and blackboard
   c desk and chair

6 While you are in a taxi you pass some modern buildings. Ask the driver what they are:
   a building to your left
   b building to your right
   c the tall building over there

7 Translate the following dialogue between driver and passenger into Korean:
A: Where can I take you to?
B: I am going to the U.S. Embassy in Kwanghwamoon.
A: Which way should I take?
B: You drive up to City Hall and make a right turn there.
A: I see.

**Culture point**
Most foreigners may feel uncomfortable catching a taxi on the street in Seoul. Taxis do not always wait to pick up a customer at a taxi-stand. They may come to a rather sudden halt wherever people hail them. Understandably, some taxi drivers may refuse to pick up a customer when his direction is different from the one the taxi is heading in. However, the "Mobum Taxi" (Deluxe Taxi) (lit. "exemplar taxi"), which provides a luxurious service (like limousine service common in America) will pick up a customer and take him wherever he wants to go. Anyone who wants to be punctual should use the latter taxi service. Most taxi drivers, except the ones operated by the "Mobum Taxi" company, use the ride-share method and pick up one or two or more customers who are heading in the same or similar direction as the first passenger, often without his consent. Many Korean drivers, including taxi drivers, tend to smoke while driving. In this case, you, of course, have a right to ask them to refrain from smoking during driving. However, some care is needed not to lower and darken their "kibun" – see the Culture point of Lesson 3.

**Dialogue 2**

Around the time when the taxi has arrived at his destination in Dongdaemoon, Mr. Moon asks the driver to drop him off past the traffic signal near Dongdaemoon Station, where he pays the fare

운전기사: 여기가 동대문 지하철역입니다. 여기서 내리시겠어요?
손님: 아니오. 앞으로 좀 더 가세요.
운전기사: 저기 네거리에서 내려줄 수 있어요?
운전기사: 그럼, 저기 신호등 지나서 내려 드리겠습니다.
손님: 좋습니다.
운전기사: 저, 다 왔습니다. 여기서 내리시죠.
손님: 네, 그러지요. 요금이 얼마입니까?
운전기사: 6,300원입니다.
손님: 저, 여기 있습니까.
운전기사: 예, 갑사합니다.
손님: 그럼, 아저씨 수고하세요.
**Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>내리다</td>
<td>get off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앞으로</td>
<td>forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좀 더</td>
<td>a little further</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네거리(사거리)</td>
<td>intersection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내려주다</td>
<td>let someone off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신호등</td>
<td>traffic signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수고하세요요.</td>
<td>goodbye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지나다</td>
<td>go by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>요금</td>
<td>fare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼마</td>
<td>how much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>원</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기 있습니다</td>
<td>자리에 있습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아니요</td>
<td>제과점</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기입니다</td>
<td>driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기이야요</td>
<td>bakery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Language points**

**The conjunction -아/어서**

This conjunction is used to connect one action to another. It expresses the close relationship between the two in addition to their temporal ordering. The conjunction is directly attached to the stem of the first verb. Verbs that take this conjunction are limited to verbs implying movement or change of posture. Some of them are 가다, 오다, 지나다, 일어나다, 앉다. However, the conjunction -고 connects two actions of other verbs, and simply expresses the notion of “after” in English.

저는 도서관에 가서 공부해요.  
친구가 일어나서 책을 읽어요.  
저기 신호등을 지나서 내리겠어요.  
공부하고 잊어요.  
I go to the library and study there.  
My friend stands up and reads a book.  
I’ll get off after the traffic signals there.  
I slept after study.

Also note that the tense is expressed in the second verb, but not in the first one.

도서관에 가서 공부합니다.  
도서관에 가서 공부했습니다.  
도서관에 가서 공부하겠습니다.  
Let’s go to the library and study there. (present)  
I went to the library and studied there. (past)  
I’ll go to the library and study there. (future)
The auxiliary verb -ㄹ(을) 수 있다

This auxiliary verb is equivalent to “can” or “(to) be able to” in English. -ㄹ 수 있다 is attached to a verb stem ending in a vowel, but -을 수 있다 is attached to a verb stem ending in a consonant. The opposite form is -ㄹ(을) 수 없다.

저기서 내릴 수 있다. I can get off there.
저기서 자는 수 있다. I can sleep there.
교회에 갈 수 있었다. I could go to church.
그 책을 읽을 수 없었다. I couldn’t read the book.

Large numbers and money

Sino-Korean numbers beyond 100, together with the way these numbers are combined with various Korean monetary units, are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>백</th>
<th>천</th>
<th>만</th>
<th>백면</th>
<th>천만</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>십만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>20,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>200,000</td>
<td>이십만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>300,000</td>
<td>삼십만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>40,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>400,000</td>
<td>사십만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>50,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>500,000</td>
<td>오십만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>60,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>600,000</td>
<td>육십만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>7,000</td>
<td>70,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>700,000</td>
<td>칠십만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>8,000</td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>800,000</td>
<td>팔십만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>9,000</td>
<td>90,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>900,000</td>
<td>구십만</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The basic monetary unit in Korea is 원 (won). When amounts are expressed in Arabic numerals, they are preceded by the symbol “원” There are two kinds of units: coins and paper bills.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coins</th>
<th>Paper Bills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>십원 (₩10)</td>
<td>천원 (₩1,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오십원 (₩50)</td>
<td>오천원 (₩5,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>백원 (₩100)</td>
<td>만원 (₩10,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오백원 (₩500)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The composite verbs 내려주다 vs. 내려드리다

The composite verb 내려주다 means “let a junior out,” while 내려드리다 means “let a senior out.” So, the verb you use depends on who it is you are letting out of the car.

역 앞에서 내려 주겠어요. I'll let you out in front of the station. (to junior passenger)
역 앞에서 내려 드리겠습니다. I'll let you out in front of the station. (to senior passenger)

The contracted sentence ending -시죠

This sentence ending is the contracted form of the less polite informal ending -시키요, which was introduced in Lesson 7. In casual conversation the second syllable -시 is united with the last syllable, where the vowel 이 is dropped. This process yields the contracted form -죠.

여기서 내리시지요? You get off here, don’t you?
여기서 내리시죠? You go to the theater tomorrow, don’t you?
내일 극장에 가시지요?
내일 극장에 가시죠?

Exercises

8 The taxi has come near your destination and you want to get out. Ask the driver if he can let you off in front of the following places:

a bakery
b bank
c church

9 The taxi is approaching your destination and you want to pay the fare. Ask the driver how much you need to pay.

10 One of your friends asks you what you are going to do tomorrow. Tell him that you have two things to do, one after the other:

a go to the library and read newspapers
b go to the bar and meet people
11 A friend asks you to do three things for her because she is sick. Tell her that you can do the following things:

a go shopping  
b go to the bank  
c clean the room

12 Someone you know asks you to lend him a large amount of money. Tell him that you have only ₩14,000 in your pocket.

13 A friend has been to a bookstore and bought the following three articles. Ask him how much he paid for each item.

a book  
b notebook  
c memo pad

14 You went to the shopping mall and bought a couple of items. A friend of yours asks how much you paid for each item. Respond to her question.

a hat (₩4,000)  
b clothes (₩45,000)

15 Respond to each of the questions the driver asks you inside a taxi, using the information given.

a 어디서 내려 드릴까요? (교보빌딩)  
b 어디까지 가세요? (시청)  
c 제 과정 앞에서 내리시겠죠? (저기 신호등 지나서)

16 You know Mr. Kim very well. He is older than you and senior to you at work. One afternoon you and he have agreed to spend some time at Itaewon. Suggest that he takes a taxi to get there, using the contracted informal ending -시죠.

17 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: May I drop you off here?  
B: No, can you go a little further?  
A: I can’t stop over there.  
B: Then, can you let me off past that intersection?  
A: Of course.  
B: How much is the taxi fare?  
A: It’s ₩6,700.
18 Reading passage Edward Moon visited Seoul on a business trip. He took a taxi from the airport to Hotel Sinra, because he was a stranger to Seoul. But he was not very happy when he realized that it took him much longer than usual. Try to figure out what made him feel unhappy.

Edward Moon 씨는 사업차 서울을 방문했다. 서울거리를 잘 몰라서 공항에서 택시를 탔다. 운전기사 아저씨는 영어를 할 수 없어서, 그는 한국말로 해야 했다. 신라호텔까지는 보통 1시간이 걸리지만, 이번에는 2시간이 걸렸다. 운전기사 아저씨가 길을 잘못 들여 시간이 더 많이 걸렸다. 그래서 택시비도 두배 많이 지불해야 했다.

Key words

| 사업차 | visit |
| 방문하다 | on business |
| 거리 | street |
| 모르다 | do not know |
| 공항 | airport |
| 운전기사 | driver |
| 신라호텔 | Hotel Shinra |
| 걸리다 | take |
| 길을 | enter the |
| 잘못 들음 | wrong way |
| 택시비 | taxi fare |
| 두배 | twice |
| 지불하다 | pay |
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• do basic shopping at a Korean market
• negotiate prices
• know where you can shop in Korea
• use the long negation form -지 않다
• use base, comparative, and superlative structures
• use the contrastive conjunction -(으)나
• use the sentence endings -(을) 것 같다, -(은/는)네요, -(을)게요

Dialogue 1

Minsoo Lee and John Whitman have been close friends since they started working at an importing company a number of years ago. One Saturday afternoon, Minsoo suggests to John that they go shopping at a large department store.

민수: 존, 오늘 오후에 쇼핑 같이 가겠어요?
존: 좋아요. 어디로 가겠어요?
민수: 남대문 시장이 어때요?
존: 남대문 시장은 물건이 대체로 좋지 않아요.
민수: 그럼, 어디가 좋겠어요?
존: 신세계 백화점이 남대문 시장보다 더 좋을 것 같아요.
민수: 백화점은 값이 비싸지 않아요?
존: 값이 비싸지만, 질은 아주 좋아요.
민수: 그럼, 신세계 백화점으로 가요.

Vocabulary

오후 afternoon 보다 더 (better or worse) than
쇼핑 shopping 값 price
남대문 시장 Namdaemun 비싸다 expensive
Market 질 quality
Language points

The long negative form -지 않다

Lesson 1 introduced the short negative form of most Korean verbs, namely -안. However, another way to negate a verb is to attach the long form -지 않다 to the stem of the verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Long negative ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>분명하다</td>
<td>clear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>분명하지 않다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말하다</td>
<td>speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>말하지 않다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놀다</td>
<td>play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>놀지 않다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although most verbs can take either form of negation, certain verbs commonly take the long form rather than the short one.

公부했습니다 studied (X) 안 공부했습니다 (O) 공부하지 않았습니다
서 있다 be standing (X) 안 서 있다 (O) 서 있지 않다

X = ungrammatical sentence, O = grammatical sentence

The particle - 만큼 for base comparison

This particle is attached to the noun, which is used as a base for comparison. It indicates extent, degree, or “as much as.”

이 가방은 저 가방만큼 크다. This bag is as big as that bag.
내 친구는 나만큼 키가 크다. My friend is as tall as I am.

The comparison particle 보다 (더)

This particle is used to express the equivalent of English “than.” When -보다 is used, the use of 더 is optional.
The Korean language is easier (to learn) than English.
The train runs faster than the car.

**The superlative word of an adjectival verb**

In order to indicate the greatest degree when three or more items are compared, adjectival verbs in Korean can take the superlative words (제일, 가장).

이것이 제일(가장) 비싸요. 롯데백화점이 가장 좋아요. This thing is the most expensive. Lotte Department Store is the best.

**The sentence ending - 은(을) 것 같다**

This sentence ending is used with any type of verb and indicates the likehood of a certain event. Its meaning is equivalent to the English expression “is likely to be,” “might do...”. - 은 것 같다 is inserted after a stem ending in a vowel, but - 을 것 같다 is inserted if the stem ends in a consonant.

이것이 비쌀 것 같다. 그 학생이 책을 읽을 것 같다. 여기가 시청할 것이다. This thing seems to be expensive. The student seems to be reading a book. This place seems to be City Hall.

**The adjectival verb 어렇다**

This verb literally means “to be (some way),” “to be (what way),” or “to be (how).” English translations of this verb may vary, depending upon the context used. It is irregular in the past, present, and future tenses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>어렇다 be (how)</td>
<td>어때요</td>
<td>어땠어요</td>
<td>어땠겠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오늘 날씨는 어때요?</td>
<td>How is today’s weather?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소풍은 어땠어요?</td>
<td>How was your picnic?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내일 미도파 백화점이 어떻겠어요?</td>
<td>How about (going to) Midopa Department Store tomorrow?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

1 A saleswoman at a general store keeps asking you whether you want to buy the following item. Tell her you are not interested in buying them, using the long negative form. Look in the Glossary for new words.

a towel
b jeans
c short pants

2 Look at the pictures and compare two objects, using the base comparison form - 만큼:

a

b

3 Look at the pictures and compare two objects, using the comparative comparison form - 보다(더):

a

b

c
Look at the pictures and answer these questions:

a) Listen to the speaker and choose the correct answer:

b) Listen to the speaker and choose the correct answer:

c) Listen to the speaker and choose the correct answer:

At a general goods store you have looked at a number of items. Although they are good-quality merchandise, you are not interested in buying them because they look expensive. Tell a salesman that the following items look expensive:

a) necktie
b) shoes
c) T-shirt

Suggest to a friend of yours that he go shopping at the Midopa Department Store.

Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: Would you go shopping with me this afternoon?
B: I'm a little bit busy this afternoon.
A: Well then, how about tomorrow?
B: I am free tomorrow.
A: Call me after work tomorrow.
**Culture point**

Price haggling is a well-known phenomenon at most Korean stores such as those in Itaewon, one of the busiest shopping districts in Seoul, which is frequented by foreigners. Although it is difficult to see the rationale behind this practice, many Korean shopkeepers customarily make the customer feel good by giving them a discount for the merchandise they purchase! However, don’t feel too pleased about the discount because in most cases Korean merchants may have already raised the price of the merchandise by the same margin. Shoppers may end up paying the right price for the merchandise after the discount has been given. It is also possible that they may be left to pay more than the original price should it be raised by more than the amount of the discount. However, foreigners who shop at department stores may not get a discount, and should assume all merchandise is to be sold for the marked price. It is usually a good idea to shop at department stores at a certain time of the year when they set out bigger bargains for a sales promotion.

---

**Dialogue 2** ☑️ Mr. Lee and Mr. Whitman arrive at the General Goods Store in Dongdaemoon and go into the luggage section. A saleswoman welcomes them with a beaming smile

점원: 어서 오세요. 뭐 찾으세요?
민수: 점가방 좀 볼 수 있어요?
점원: 보세요. 빨간 것, 파란 것, 노란 것 여러 가지가 있어요.
존: 이 빨간 가방은 얼마예요?
점원: 이만 오천 원입니다.
게 가방은 값은 싸냐, 디자인이 안좋아요.
민수: 이 노란 가방은 어떡요?
점원: 그 가방은 든든해서 값이 비싸요.
오만 사천 원입니다.
민수: 너무 비싼데요. 좀 깔끔은 수 없어요?
점원: 가만있지. 그럼, 깔아서 사만 원만 내세요.
민수: 아가씨, 크레디트카드 받으세요?
점원: 물론 받지요.
존: 저 것도 깔아 주세요. 저는 현금으로 낼게요.
점원: 내, 좋습니다. 삼만 원만 내세요.
존/민수: 감사합니다.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>어서</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>너무</td>
<td>too much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾다</td>
<td>look for</td>
<td>내다</td>
<td>pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점가방</td>
<td>luggage bag</td>
<td>크레디트카드</td>
<td>credit card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빨간(것)</td>
<td>red (thing)</td>
<td>받다</td>
<td>accept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파란(것)</td>
<td>blue (thing)</td>
<td>현금</td>
<td>cash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노란(것)</td>
<td>yellow (thing)</td>
<td>물론</td>
<td>of course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여러 가지</td>
<td>many kinds</td>
<td>깔다</td>
<td>cut down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값이 싸다</td>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>가만있다</td>
<td>let me see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>디자인</td>
<td>design</td>
<td>접원</td>
<td>salesperson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>튼튼하다</td>
<td>sturdy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

The ≠ irregular verbs

The stem of certain verbs drops ≠ when it modifies to a following noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>빨강다</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>파란 것</td>
<td>blue/green thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빨간 가방</td>
<td>red bag</td>
<td>노랗다</td>
<td>yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빨간 것</td>
<td>red thing</td>
<td>노란 가방</td>
<td>yellow bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파란다</td>
<td>blue/green</td>
<td>노란 것</td>
<td>yellow thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파란 가방</td>
<td>blue/green bag</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When it has been mentioned in the previous sentences, in the above color-modified words, 가방 can be replaced with the pronoun 것.

The contrastive conjunction -(으)나

The contrastive ending -(으)나 ("although," "but") was introduced in Lesson 8. Here is another ending of the same kind which is somewhat less colloquial than -(으)나. It connects two clauses which contain contrasting values. -(으)나 is used after a verb stem which ends in a vowel, while -(으)나 is used after a verb stem ending in a consonant.

ожьеойоожьтеоожitez
The exclamatory ending - 농 (은/는)데요

This sentence ending is used to indicate interest, surprise, delight, and other emotions shown by both the speaker and the hearer. The ending - 농 (은)데요 is attached to adjectival verbs and to the verb of identification 이다, while the ending -눈데요 is used in other verbs.

산다 cheap 이 책은 값이 싸네요. This book is cheap!
작다 small 이 교실은 작은데요. This classroom is small!
이다 be 이것은 한국어책인데요. This is a Korean book!
가다 go 내 동생이 저기에 가는데요. My younger brother goes there!

The particle 만

This particle can be attached to almost any word in a sentence. It expresses exclusivity and is equivalent to “only.”

그 책만 주세요. Give (me) only that book.
동물원은 오늘만 문을 닫아요. The zoo closes only today.

The sentence ending - 었(을)계요

This ending, when attached to the stem of any action verb and the verb 있다, expresses the speaker’s intention in a casual conversation.

오늘 저녁은 제가 냉게요. I’ll treat you tonight.
저는 냉면을 먹을게요. I’ll have cold noodles with hot paste.
이 가방은 현금으로 지불할게요. I’ll pay for this bag in cash.

Exercises

8 You are at a luggage store and want to have a look at four bags of different colors. Ask the storekeeper how much each bag is:

a yellow bag
b red bag
c blue bag
9 You are at a clothing store and you want to have a look at a couple of shirts. Ask the storekeeper whether you can do so:
   a blue T-shirt
   b red T-shirt
   c yellow T-shirt

10 You think that the price of a T-shirt sounds too much, and you want to barter the price down. Ask the salesman whether he can give you a discount on it.

11 You want to buy the sturdy-looking piece of luggage which the sales assistant has brought out for you. Tell him that you won’t buy it (because it is expensive), although it is a good luggage bag.

12 You think that the price of the following merchandise is too high. Tell the saleswoman that it is too expensive, using the informal sentence ending -데 요.
   a purse
   b pair of socks
   c red hat

13 The store owner puts out a T-shirt, a pair of socks, and a blue bag. Tell him that you want to buy only the blue bag.

14 You want to buy a pretty hat at the store and pay for it. Tell the salesman that you want to pay in cash. Use the casual sentence ending -께 요.

15 You are helping someone who is learning Korean with their grammar. Correct these sentences:
   a John은 요즈음 도서관에서 안 공부한다.
   b 저기가 있는 반바지 주시겠어요?
   c 빨강은 바지 사겠어요.
   d 저 푸른 가방은 어떡어요?

16 Translate the following dialogue into Korean.
   A: May I look at some school bags?
   B: Certainly. Which color would you like?
   A: I’d like white, please.
   B: These are white ones. These bags look nice and durable.
   A: How much is this brown bag?
   B: It’s ￦45,000. But I’ll give you a big discount since you are a student.
   A: Thanks very much.
17 Respond to each question:

a. 요즘 어느 백화점에 자주 가십니까?
b. 지금 무슨 색 양말을 신고 있습니까?
c. 구두는 무슨 색깔입니까?

18 Reading passage Min Soo Lee and John Whitman went to the discount store at Itaewon in Seoul. Min Soo bought some pairs of white socks at one store, while John bought the same kind of socks at the other store. They were very surprised when they realized that they bought the same things at different prices. Try to figure out who got the better price. Who couldn’t buy anything, and why?

민수는 어제 오후에 John과 함께 이태원에 있는 한국 가게에 갔다. 민수는 어느 한 가게에서 양말 두 쌍에 5,000원 주고 샀으나, John은 값을 깎아서 4,000원에 샀다. 그 가게의 물건 값이 비싸서 민수는 빨간 시계를 살 수 없었다. John은 파란 넥타이를 샀는데, 값을 깎아서 12,000원에 현금으로 샀다.

Key words

오후 afternoon 물건 merchandise
이태원 Itaewon 비싸다 expensive
한국 가게 Korean store 빨간 red
양말 socks 넥타이 necktie
켤레 pair 현금 cash
g값을 깎다 cut the price
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:

- talk about a trip to Korean cities
- make a ticket reservation
- use the sentence endings -ㄹ(을)거 하다, -(으)면 됩니다
- use the conjunctive proposition -하고
- use the relative clause marker -(은/는/ㄹ(을)
- use the progressive tense form -고 있다
- use the conjunctive postposition -하고
- use the days of the week
- use the particle (-이)나

Dialogue 1

Jane Smith is a freelance writer on the Seoul Press where Thomas Moon, a Korean-American, works as editorial assistant. One Friday afternoon she runs across him by the office elevator

문: 이번 토요일하고 일요일에 무얼 하세요?
제안: 글쎄요. 설악산에 갈까요 합니다.
문: 아, 그러세요. 무엇으로 가세요?
제안: 비행기나 기차로 갈까요 해요.
문: 기차가 더 편하고 안전할거예요. 언제 떠나세요?
제안: 토요일 새벽 6시 30분에 떠날것 해요.
문: 기차로 여기에서 설악산까지 얼마나 걸리지요?
제안: 약 3시간 걸리지요.
문: 갔다가 언제 오세요?
제안: 일요일 저녁에 늦게 돌아올까 해요.
문: 그럼, 잘 다녀 오세요.
**Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이번에</td>
<td>this time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>토요일</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일요일</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>설악산</td>
<td>Mount Sorak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비행기</td>
<td>airplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차</td>
<td>train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>편하다</td>
<td>comfortable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안전하다</td>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>떠나다</td>
<td>leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>새벽</td>
<td>at dawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>늦게</td>
<td>late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아오다</td>
<td>return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다녀오다</td>
<td>go and come back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(honorific)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>천만에요</td>
<td>you’re (quite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(welcome)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>글쎄요</td>
<td>let me see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무엇으로</td>
<td>by what</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Language points**

*The sentence ending* - 을(을)까 하다

This ending is used to indicate a speaker’s tentative plans about something. It is always used with action and verbs. -을(을)까 하다 is used after a vowel, but -을(을)까 하다 is used after a consonant.

일요일에 시내구경을 나갈까 합니.  
내일 오후에는 극장에 갈까 해요.  
I’m planning on touring around downtown on Sunday.  
I’m planning on going to the theater tomorrow afternoon.

*The particle* -(이)나

This particle, when attached to a noun, indicates a selection or option. It is equivalent to “or.”

부산이나 경주에 가겠어요.  I’ll go to either Pusan or Kyongju.  
연필이나 펜을 빌려 주세요.  Please lend me either a pencil or a pen.

*The conjunctive postposition* - 하고

This conjunction is used to connect two or more nouns, and is equivalent to “and.” It is attached to the first noun.
오늘하고 내일은 비가 올겁니다. Today and tomorrow it rains.
교실에 책상하고 의자가 많이 있어요. There are many desks and chairs in the classroom.

**The compound verb** 갓다 오다

This verb phrase literally means "going to a certain place and coming back from there," and is equivalent to "have been to," or "have come back from." Note that the tense is reflected in the second element 오다.

어디 갓다 오세요? Where've you been?
학교에 갓다 옵니다. I've been to school.
롯데백화점에 갓다 왔어요. I've been to Lotte Department Store.

**Days of the week**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>월요일</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화요일</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수요일</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>목요일</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>금요일</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>토요일</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일요일</td>
<td>Sunday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

오늘은 무슨 요일입니까? What day (of the week) is it today?
수요일입니다. It's Wednesday.

**Exercises**

1 A friend of yours asks you what you are going to do over the long holiday weekend. Tell him that you are considering doing these things:

a sightseeing in downtown Seoul
b going to Chejudo by air
c going swimming

2 You are standing at the bus stop and someone asks which bus goes to Itaewon. Tell him that either #35 or #56 goes there.
3 Circle the correct particle:

a 연필(이나, 나) 책을 사겠어요.
b 신세계 백화점(이나, 나) 미도파 백화점에 가겠어요.
c 시장에서 모자(이나, 나) 구두를 사겠어요.

4 You are giving an American who has recently joined your company some bus scheduling information. Tell her that two buses go to the following places:

a #23 and #45 (City Hall)
b #46 and #67 (U.S. Embassy)

5 You are at the train station and a passenger asks you which train goes to Pusan. Tell him that the trains indicated below will probably go there at the following times:

a 새마을호 at 10:30 A.M.
b 무궁화호 at 3:35 P.M.

6 You run across a friend of yours on Broad Street in downtown Seoul, and she asks you where you have been. Tell her that you have been to the Midopa Department Store.

7 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What are you going to do this weekend?
B: Let me see. Maybe I will go to Chejudo by air.
A: Are you going to meet someone there?
B: Well, my uncle lives there.
A: Oh, I see. Have a good trip.
B: Yeah, I will.

8 Fill in the blanks in this dialogue:

A: 어디 갔다 오세요?
B:
A: 거기서 무얼 샀어요?
B:
A: 거기 물건 값은 어떻게요?
B:
A: 나도 다음에 시간 나면, 거기 가야겠어요.
B:
Culture point
Mount Sorak is a popular tourist resort which a foreign traveler should not miss visiting. This mountain is famous for its steep peaks of granite, cut sharp by nature, and for the beautiful valleys beneath it. Its multicolored maple foliage in the autumn season attracts an especially large number of not only domestic, but also foreign, tourists. Designated as part of the Mount Sorak National Park by the Korean government, it includes first-rate hotels, inns, convenience stores, parking lots, and other public facilities, including camp sites. A cable car 3,610 foot (1,100 meters) long connects the Park entrance to the top of the mountain. Other points of interest in the outer area of Mount Sorak are Pisondae Plateau, from which an angel is said to have ascended to heaven, and Osaek mineral water, which many Koreans drink, hoping to be relieved of digestive ailments. Tourists can use various means of transportation to get to this resort area. From Seoul, it takes about one hour by air and four hours by train to get to Mount Sorak.

Dialogue 2
The next morning Jane Smith gets to the station and buys a ticket to Mount Sorak

Jane: Excuse me. Where do I buy a train ticket?
Traveler: At the ticket booth.
Jane: Okay.

(Jane approaches the ticket window)

Jane: Excuse me. I need a train ticket, please.
Ticket seller: Sorry, I’m busy. But I’ll be able to serve you later. I’ll be on the platform at 4:45. The train leaves at 5:45.
Jane: Okay, thank you.
Ticket seller: Until then.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>실례합니다</td>
<td>excuse me</td>
<td>장</td>
<td>counting unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차표</td>
<td>train ticket</td>
<td>열차</td>
<td>for tickets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔다</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>(플랫폼)</td>
<td>train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>메표구</td>
<td>ticket booth</td>
<td>(플랫폼)</td>
<td>platform</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The dependent noun -행

This noun is attached to the traveler's destination. The English equivalent of this is "bound for a certain place."

부산행 기차표 ticket to Pusan
서울행 기차표 ticket to Seoul
미국행 비행기표 ticket to America

The noun counter -장

This counter, when attached to numerals, is used to count paper or tickets of any type. It is equivalent to the English expression "a piece of." The combination of the numeral and the counter must follow the thing(s) being counted.

중이 한 장 two pieces of paper
열차표 세 장 thirteen train tickets
비행기표 두 장 two airline tickets

The relative clause marker -에(은)/는/에(을)

We have introduced the noun modifier -에(은), used with adjectival verbs, in Lesson 8. This indicates a quality, quantity, or the extent of the noun modified. This modifier, however, can also be used to relativize the adjectival verb of a sentence to the main sentence.

집이 좋다 the house is good
집이 좋은 사람 the person who has a good house
키가 크다 tall
키가 큰 사람 the person who is tall
When the relative clause marker is attached to the stem of the action verb, it indicates the *past tense*:

- 지나갔다 + 버스 → 지나간 버스
  - passed + bus → the bus which passed

- 도서관에서 공부했다 + 학생 → 도서관에서 공부한 학생
  - studied at the library + student → the student who studied at the library

- 책을 읽었다 + 학생 → 책을 읽은 학생
  - read the book + student → the student who read the book

But when the action verb is relativized, the relative clause marker -는 is taken to indicate the *present tense*:

- 지나가다 + 버스 → 지나가는 버스
  - pass + bus → the bus that passes

- 도서관에서 공부하다 + 학생 → 도서관에서 공부하는 학생
  - study at the library + student → the student who studies at the library

- 책을 읽다 + 학생 → 책을 읽는 학생
  - read the book + student → the student who reads the book

To indicate the *future tense* the relative clause marker -ㄹ(을) is used with action verbs as well as with adjectival verbs.

- 지나가다 + 버스 → 지나갈 버스
  - pass + bus → the bus which will pass

- 도서관에서 공부하다 + 학생 → 도서관에서 공부할 학생
  - study at the library + student → the student who will study at the library

*The progressive tense form* -고 있다

This ending, preceded by action verbs, expresses the notion of continuing an action or process. Here again, the tense is reflected in the second element.

- 학생들이 지금 도서관에서 공부하고 있어요.
  - Students are now studying at the library.
Students were then studying at the library.
Right now, the train is entering the station.
The bus was entering the station.

**The sentence ending -(으)면 됩니다**

This ending, when used with any type of verb, expresses a speaker’s suggestion for a hearer to engage in some appropriate action in a given situation. The English equivalent of it is “All you have to do is . . .”.

지금 열차에 타시면 됩니다.
저를 따라 오시면 됩니다.
그 책을 읽으시면 됩니다.
You only have to get on the train.
You only have to follow me.
You only have to read the book.

**Exercises**

9 Assume you need to buy three tickets bound for the following places. Ask a clerk at the ticket booth to issue them for you.

a one ticket for Pusan
b two tickets for Kyongju
c three tickets for Kwangju

10 At the crowded station you need to get a train ticket bound for Mount Sorak. Ask a passerby where you can get one.

11 Ask the clerk at the ticket booth to give you just one ticket for Pusan.

12 You notice that a train is just arriving at platform #6. Ask people around you whether the train will go to Pusan.

13 Someone calls you at home and asks what you are doing. Tell him that you are doing the following:
a reading today’s newspaper  
b talking with friends  
c doing nothing

14 A passenger hurries into the station and asks around to find which train goes to Kyoungju. You are sure that train #101 on platform #7 is about to leave for Kyoungju. Tell him all he needs to do is to get on that train.

15 You are helping someone who is learning Korean. Correct the following grammar:

a 지금 들어 왔은 기차가 부산에 갑니다.  
b 도서관에서 잡지를 읽은 학생들은 공부를 잘한다.  
c 기차를 타는 손님들은 미국 사람들이다.

16 Rearrange these words to make meaningful sentences:

a 있어요, 미국에, 비행기, 가는, 10시에  
b 부산, 있어요?, 고속버스, 몇 시에, 가는  
c 지하철, 수원행, 있어요, 세 시에

17 You are on a local train bound for Pusan and a Korean passenger sitting nearby asks you a number of questions. See how many questions you can answer:

A: 어디까지 가세요?  
B:  
A: 어느 역에서 타셨어요?  
B:  
A: 이 기차는 몇 시에 부산에 도착합니까?  
B:  

18 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What are you going to do over this weekend?  
B: I will probably go to New York City.  
A: How do you get to New York City?  
B: By car.  
A: When are you planning to return?  
B: I will return by late Sunday night.

19 Reading passage  Thomas Moon took a train to Kwangju, where one of his brothers lives. Although it took him some hours to get there, the trip wasn’t too uncomfortable. After
getting off the train, he took a bus and went to his brother’s house. In reading the passage, try to figure out how many hours it took him to get to his destination by train and what number bus he took at the railroad station to get to his brother’s house.

том은 지난 주말에 남쪽에 있는 광주에 기차를 타고 갔다. 서울 역에서 기차를 타고 대전을 지나서 광주에 갔다. 서울에서 광주 까지는 4시간 걸렸다. 기차 안에는 승객이 많았지만, 불편하지는 않았다. 광주역에 도착해 차에서 내려 버스 정류장으로 갔다. 거기서 7번 버스를 타고 송정리에 있는 형님 집으로 갔다.

Key words

주말 weekend 승객 passengers
남쪽 south 불편하다 uncomfortable
광주 Kwangju city 내리다 get off
역 station 정류장 station (bus stop)
대전 Taejon city 송정리 (the town of) Songjonglee
지나다 go by 형님 one’s older brother
걸리다 take
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• open a bank account
• withdraw cash
• fill out a withdrawal slip
• use the conjunction -(으) 니까
• read dates, months, and years on a calendar
• use the phrasal endings -(으) 려, -(으) 려고, -(으) 려면
• use the conjunctive particle -와/과
• use the sentence ending -이 필요하다

Dialogue 1  
James Park, an intern at a major Korean stock exchange company, wants to open a general account at a Korean bank nearby. A bank teller instructs him what to do

행원: 어떻게 오셨어요?
박: 예금을 하러고 왔어요.
행원: 무슨 예금으로 하시겠어요?
박: 보통예금으로 하겠어요.
행원: 우선 이 표에 성함과 주소를 기입하세요.

박: 저는 도장이 없으니가 서명을 하겠어요.
행원: 그럼, 도장칸에 서명을 하세요.
박: 예, 잘 알겠습니다.
(한참후에)
박: 다 기입했습니다.
행원: 저기 소파에 앉아서 잠깐만 기다려 주세요.
박: 그렇게 하지요.
행원: 손님, 통장 여기 있습니다.
박: 예, 감사합니다. 수고하세요.
행원: 안녕히 가세요.
Vocabulary

예금 savings
예금하다 deposit (verb)
보통예금 general (bank)
account
우선 first of all
표 slip
성함 name (honorific)
주소 address
기입하다 fill in
비밀번호 PIN number
날짜 date
적다 write
도장 wooden stamp
칸 column
서명 signature
소파 sofa
잠깐만 for a moment
통장 passbook

Language points

The purpose ending -(으)려고

This ending is used with any action verb and indicates the purpose of the subject. The English equivalent of this phrase is “in order to.” The suffix -(으) is inserted after the verb stem ending in any consonant (apart from 음).

이 선물을 동생에게 주려고 샀습니다. I bought this gift for my younger brother/sister.
예금을 하려고 은행에 갔습니다. I went to the bank to make a deposit.
차를 사려고 돈을 빌렸어요. I borrowed money to buy a car.

The conjunctive particle -와/과

This particle is interchangeable with -(으)하고, explained in Lesson 11, although the former is more widely used in written Korean.

교실에 책상과 의자가 많이 있어요. There are many desks and chairs in the classroom.
John은 미도파 백화점에서 모자와 구두를 샀다. John bought a hat and shoes at the Midopa department store.

The causal conjunction -(으)니까

This conjunction is used with all verbs and indicates the cause and effect relationship between the first and second clauses in a
sentence. The English equivalent is “because,” “as,” “since.” Although this conjunction is interchangeable, as explained in Lesson 3, the conjunction -(으)니까 differs from the conjunction -(어/여서) in that the latter pattern cannot be used when the second clause involves some type of request.

눈이 오니까, 
방으로 들어 갑니다. 
텔레비전이 재미 없으니까, 
보지 않았어요. 
(X) 아기가 방에서 자서, 
조용히 핑니다. 

Since it’s snowing, let’s go into the room. 
Since TV wasn’t interesting, 
I didn’t watch. 
Since the baby is sleeping, 
let’s be quiet.

**Months of the year**

Sino-Korean number words are used for the months of the year. Another word, 월, is used to indicate “month.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>일월</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이월</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>삼월</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사월</td>
<td>April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오월</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*유월</td>
<td>June</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*서월</td>
<td>July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔월</td>
<td>August</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구월</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*시월</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>십월</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>십이월</td>
<td>December</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Days of the month**

The reading of days of the month consists of Sino-Korean number words and another word, 일, to indicate “day.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4월 20일</td>
<td>(April 20th)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6월 14일</td>
<td>(June 14th)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8월 29일</td>
<td>(August 29th)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Years**

For days of the year, Sino-Korean number words are used. Another word, 년, is used to indicate “year.”

*Note: An asterisk (*) indicates the irregular Sino-Korean numbers 6 and 10.*
What day of the month (date) is it today?


Exercises

1. You have bought a couple of gifts for your family at the Midopa Department Store. A friend of yours asks you who you bought them for. Respond to his question:
   a. a pair of socks for your younger sister
   b. ballpoint pen for your uncle
   c. T-shirt for your grandmother

2. You happen to meet someone you know well at the local bookstore, and she asks what you bought there. Tell her that you bought a dictionary and a pen.

3. You missed the staff meeting at the place you work, and your supervisor asks you why you did not attend the meeting. Tell him that, since you were sick, you couldn’t get to the meeting.

4. You quit reading the book you bought a few days ago, and a friend of yours, who happened to know about this, asks you why. Tell her that, since it was no fun, you gave up reading the book.

5. You have come out in the middle of a show at the movies, and the man at the entrance asks you why you did not stay till the end. Tell him that, since it was no fun, you came out in the middle.

6. A child visiting your home starts shouting while a baby is fast asleep nearby. Ask him to be quiet, since the baby is sleeping.

7. Answer each question, based on real life:
   a. 언제 태어났어요?
   b. 오늘은 몇 일입니까?
   c. 어제는 몇 일이었습니다?
8 Look at the following calendar, marked with various events happening in May:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>월 화</th>
<th>수 목</th>
<th>금 토 일</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>15 (movie)</td>
<td>16 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>23 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>30 31 (dance party)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a 몇 일에 체육관에 갑니까?
b 몇 일에 영화관에 갑니까?
c 댄스파티에는 무슨 요일에 갑니까?

9 You are at the bank and a teller asks what she can help you with. Tell her that you want to open a savings account.

10 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What can I help you with?
B: I came here to open a savings account.
A: Just fill out the form there.
B: All right.

11 Complete the following dialogue:

A: 무슨 예금 하시겠어요?
B: 
A: 도장 있어요?
B: 아니요, 저는 미국인이니까, 도장이 없어요.
A: 
B: 예, 다행합니다.
A: 
B: 예, 알겠습니다.

Culture point
The unit of Korean currency is the won (w). There are 1, 5, 10, 50, 100, and 500 coins, while paper bills come in the following amounts: 1,000, 5,000, and 10,000. Koreans do not use checks, as Americans and Europeans do: instead, they use cash in their daily transactions. When they need to carry a large amount of cash for some business
transaction or other, they have to convert cash into bank-certified checks whose minimum unit is W100,000. A foreign traveler can have foreign currency or traveler’s checks cashed into Korean won at the foreign currency booth of any authorized bank, including foreign exchange banks. He or she can use several Korean branches of American banks in downtown Seoul. The exchange rate fluctuates on a daily basis, but is around W800 per dollar. In recent years, the rate has usually run a little under W800. A current exchange rate at an English bank fluctuates around W1,200 per pound.

**Dialogue 2**

On another occasion James Park runs out of money and wants to withdraw some cash from his savings account. He gets some assistance from the teller in charge.

한원: 어떻게 오셨어요?
박: 현금을 찾으러 왔는데요.
한원: 예금을 찾으러면, 도장과 통장이 필요해요.
박: 예, 통장은 있는데, 도장이 없는데요.
한원: 그럼, 이 예금 청구서에다가 액수를 기입하세요.
그리고, 서명을 하세요.
박: 잘 알고 있습니다. 이제 다 됐습니다.
가능하면, 만원짜리 지폐로 다섯 장 주세요.
한원: 그럼, 저기 소파에 앉아서 잠깐만 기다려 주세요.
(한참후에)
한원: James Park 손님, 여기 통장과 돈을 가지고 가세요.
박: 예, 감사합니다. 아가씨, 수고하세요.
한원: 안녕히 가세요.

**Vocabulary**

| 어떻게 | how | 서명하다 | sign one’s name |
| 현금 | cash | 가능하면 | if possible |
| 현금을 찾아 | withdraw money | 만원짜리 | worth 10,000 won |
| 필요하다 | need (something) | 지폐 | paper bill |
| 없다 | don’t have | 행원 | bank teller |
| 청구서 | withdrawal slip | 돈 | money |
| 액수 | amount | 아가씨 | Miss |
Language points

**Another purpose ending - (으)러**

This phrasal ending is used with action verbs and indicates the purpose of an action. It is usually accompanied by such verbs as 가다, 오다, or other composite verbs combined with these two. This ending also signifies “in order to” in English.

- I came here to make a deposit.
- Students went to the restaurant for lunch.
- Students went to the library to study.

**The intentional/conditional ending - (으)려면**

This ending combines -으려고 and -면서, and translates as “If one is going to do something (i.e., if one intends to do something), then...” It is usually used with action verbs.

- If you want to withdraw money, you have to go to the bank.
- If you want to buy pencils, you have to go to a stationery store.
- If you want to make a deposit, you have to write the PIN number.

**The postposition - 에다가**

This postposition, when attached to nouns, indicates a specific surface on (or onto) which something is written. The English equivalent of it is “in,” “on,” or “onto.” The final word -가 can sometimes be deleted.

- Please write in the notebook.
- Please write the amount on the withdrawal slip.
The noun suffix -짜리

This noun suffix, when attached to monetary units, indicates “a thing worth . . .”

백원 짜리 두장  two ₩100 bills
만원 짜리 세장  three ₩10,000 bills
이십불 짜리 열장 ten $20 bills

The sentence ending -이 필요하다

This ending literally means “something is needed.” Although in a Korean sentence this verb takes two kinds of subject (a person and a thing), the second subject becomes the object in its English translation.

나는 연필이 필요하네요. I need a pencil.
통장을 개설하려면, You need a wooden stamp if you
도장이 필요해요. wish to open an account.

Exercises

12 Someone asks you where the members of staff in your office went during their lunch hour. Tell him that each individual went to the following places to do the following things. Use the conjunction -(으)리 in your answer.

a Mr. Kim went to the bank to withdraw some cash.
b Section Chief Lee went to the staffroom for a break.
c Secretary Hong went to the payroll office to pick up her pay check.

13 A friend of yours lost her purse somewhere in the supermarket. Advise her to go to the cashier’s desk.

14 A friend of yours doesn’t know what to do in order to withdraw cash with his check book. Advise him to write in the PIN number and sign his name on the form. In your answer, use the postposition -에다가.

15 You are in a bank and want to withdraw ₩65,000 in cash. Tell the teller you’d like five 10,000 won units and three 5,000 won units.
16 You meet a foreigner at a local bank and you notice that she is at a loss as to what she needs in order to open a savings account. Advise her that she needs the following things:

a a wooden stamp
b passport
c PIN number

17 Rearrange the words to make sense.

a 찾으러면, 예금을, 필요해요, 도장이
b 이름란에, 적으세요, 비밀번호도, 쓰시고, 도장을
c 자리, 만원, 필요해요, 다섯장

18 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: How can I help you?
B: I came here to make a deposit.
A: Just fill out the form over there.
B: All right.

19 Complete the dialogue:

A: 어떻게 오셨어요?
B:
A: 얼마나 찾으시겠어요?
B:
A: 그럼, 저기 청구서에다가 액수를 쓰세요.
B:
A: 잠깐만 기다리세요.
B:

20 Reading passage One Saturday morning, James Park goes to the bank near the hotel where he is staying. He wants to withdraw some cash, but is told that he needs to show some sort of proof of his identity. So, he goes back to his hotel room, then hurries back to the bank. But when he arrives at the bank, it is closed. Try to figure our what problem he ran into and what he had to do.

 어느 토요일 오전이었다. 제일금융회사에서 일하는 James Park 씨는 현금을 찾으러 근처에 있는 은행에 갔다. 예금을 찾으려면, 여권이 필요했다. 그러나, 여권을 호텔방에 놓아두고 와서, 현금을 찾을 수가 없었다. 그래서, 다시 호텔방에 가서 여권을 가지고 은행에 급히 갔지만, 은행은 문을 닫았다. 기분이 별로 좋지 않았다.
### Key words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>제일금융회사</td>
<td>First Banking Company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현금</td>
<td>cash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>필요하다</td>
<td>need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>농아두다</td>
<td>leave behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>급히</td>
<td>hurriedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은행</td>
<td>bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>문을닫다</td>
<td>close the door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현금을찾다</td>
<td>withdraw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
- make an apology
- talk about daily routines with friends
- use the conjunctions -기 전에, -기 때문에
- use the double past tense -없(있)었
- use the modification marker -르(을)
- use the sentence endings -아(여/여)아 되다, -군요
- use the particle -전에
- use the stative verb -하다
- use the postposition -한테

Dialogue 1
At a Dabang (Korean tearoom) Jane Adams runs into Dal Hoon Lee, a university student she has recently met. He is late for a meeting because of heavy traffic.

Jane: 늦어서 미안해요.
Dal: 천만에요.
Jane: 오래 전에 왔어요?
Dal: 아니요, 나도 조금 전에 왔어요.
Jane: 버스로 오는데, 교통이 막혀서 빨리 올 수 없었어요.
Dal: 서울 거리는 너무 차가 많아서 복잡해요.
Jane: 고려대학교 정문 앞은 완전히 막혔어요.
Dal: 그래요? 또 학생들이 대모했어요?
Jane: 아니요. 교통사고가 정문 앞에서 났었어요.
Dal: 저는 교통이 밀리기 전에 왔어요.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>늦다</td>
<td>late</td>
<td>s-s late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미안하다</td>
<td>feel sorry for</td>
<td>s-s feel sorry for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오래전에</td>
<td>a while ago</td>
<td>s-s a while ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조금전에</td>
<td>a little while ago</td>
<td>s-s a little while ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>버스</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>s-s bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통</td>
<td>traffic</td>
<td>s-s traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>막히다</td>
<td>jammed</td>
<td>s-s jammed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빨리</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>s-s quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울거리</td>
<td>Seoul streets</td>
<td>s-s Seoul streets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>복잡하다</td>
<td>crowded</td>
<td>s-s crowded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>차</td>
<td>car</td>
<td>s-s car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고려대학교</td>
<td>Korea university</td>
<td>s-s Korea university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>완전히</td>
<td>completely</td>
<td>s-s completely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태도하다</td>
<td>protest</td>
<td>s-s protest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통사고</td>
<td>traffic accident</td>
<td>s-s traffic accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정문</td>
<td>main gate</td>
<td>s-s main gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사고가 나다</td>
<td>an accident</td>
<td>s-s an accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밀리다</td>
<td>occurred</td>
<td>s-s occurred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backed up in a line</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앞</td>
<td>front</td>
<td>s-s front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전에</td>
<td>ago</td>
<td>s-s ago</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

**The temporal conjunction** -기 전에

This conjunction, when attached to the action verb stem, indicates “a time before the present.” It is equivalent to the English expression “before one does something,” or “before doing something,” as in the sentence “He returned home before it rained.”

비가 오기 전에 집에 갔습니다. Let’s go home before it starts to rain.

늦기 전에 회의에 갔습니다. Let’s go to the meeting before we’re late.

연말이 되기 전에 고향에 가겠습니다. I’ll go to my hometown before the year’s through.

**The particle** 전에

This is used with the word for the various time units (“minutes,” “hours,” etc.) and indicates “at a time before the present.” It is equivalent to “ago.”

기차가 오기 전에 도착했습니다. The train arrived five minutes ago.

한시간 전에는 날씨가 아주 좋았어요. The weather was very good even an hour ago.
The double past tense marker -었(았)었

The past tense marker -었 can be used twice when some event is completed prior to another event in the past. It can also be used when the completion of an event has no effect on the sentence uttered.

He had married (someone) three years ago.  
Mr. Kim had come here two hours ago.  
While in Korea, I used to have Korean food a lot.

Another causal conjunction -기 때문에

This conjunction connects two sentences forming a cause and effect relationship. It is interchangeable with the conjunctions -아/어/어서 and -(으)니가, explained in Lessons 3 and 12.

Since these are the last days of the semester, I am extremely busy.  
Since President Kim has a meeting, he is busy right now.  
Since the car was broken down, I came late.

But this form cannot be used with a request sentence.

Since it’s raining heavily, don’t go outside.

The stative verb 많다

This verb refers to a great quantity of things or persons. It is equivalent to “much” and “many.” But the verb is subject to various changes in form in a sentence. The adverb 많이 and the adjective 많은 are derived from this verb.
There are many students in the classroom.

Exercises

1 You are late for an appointment with your friend at a Korean tearoom (Dabang). Apologize to him.

2 Your boss asks you why you were late for a business meeting this morning. Tell him that because the traffic was terrible, you couldn’t make it on time.

3 Someone is looking for the foreman (Mr. Kim), and you think that you saw him in his office only a few minutes ago. Tell him that he was in his office just a short time ago.

4 You and some colleagues go for a picnic. In the middle of the picnic the sky suddenly turns cloudy and threatens to rain. Tell the others to go inside the building before it starts raining.

5 Correct your friend’s grammar:
   a 지금 비는 와서 안으로 들어 갑시다.
   b 바람이 많이 불기 때문에 건물 안에 들어 가세요.
   c 학생들이 교실에 많이 다.
   d 이사장님은 많은 돈이 있다.

6 Rearrange the words of the dialogue to make sense:
   a 밀려서, 교통이, 서울역, 앞은, 혼잡하다, 언제나
   b 학생들이, 테모에서, 시내에서, 복잡하다, 교통이
   c 서울에서, 먹었었다, 많은, 한국음식을

7 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
   A: I’m sorry to be late.
   B: That’s all right.
   A: I took the bus, but it couldn’t go fast because the traffic was congested.
   B: That’s too bad. Were university students rioting?
   A: Oh, no. There was a traffic accident in front of City Hall.

8 Complete the dialogue:
   A: 어제 어디 갔었어요?
   B:
A: 교통은 밀리지 않았었어요?
B: 보통 때보다 두 시간 더 걸렸었어요.
A: 교통사고가 난었어요?
B: 학생들이 데로를 했었어요.

Culture point
Koreans are generally flexible about keeping appointments. It is not uncommon to show up well over 30 minutes late for an appointment, whether business or personal. One of the major reasons for their flexibility seems to be deeply rooted in their past lifestyle. Not long ago, only a very small percentage of Koreans owned a car. The majority of Koreans had to rely on public transport whose hourly operations were extremely unpredictable. Thus, for many years, they had to live with the reality of never really knowing when they would arrive. Although nowadays over 60 percent of Seoulites own a vehicle of one type or another, their past experience is well ingrained in their modern lifestyle. Even if one has a car, appalling traffic conditions on Seoul streets cause a whole set of new problems. To minimize this sense of uncertainty, a foreigner is advised to use the subway, one of the easiest means of public transport, which runs at pre-scheduled times. Korean subways are also clean and quiet, and make stops at every major point in Seoul.

Dialogue 2 Jane begins to understand why Dal Hoon has been so busy lately when he mentions that he is tutoring his younger brother in English every week

여종업원: 안녕하세요? 뭐 드시겠어요?
제인: 저는 인심차 한 잔 하겠습니다.
달훈: 저는 커피 한 잔 하겠습니다.
여종업원: 예, 곧 갖다 드리겠습니다.
달훈: 요즘은 어떻게 지내세요?
제인: 그저 그렇게 지내요. 달훈씨는 어떻게요?
달훈: 요새 방학이지만, 할 일이 많아요.
제인: 무슨 일이 그렇게 많아요?
달훈: 내 동생한테 영어 개인지도를 해야해요.
제인: 일주일에 몇 시간씩 가르쳐요?
달훈: 4시간씩 가르쳐요.
제인: 아, 그래요. 힘들겠군요.
SEOUL SUBWAY ROUTES
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>단어</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>단어</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>단어</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>드다</td>
<td>(food)</td>
<td>그래</td>
<td>like that</td>
<td>취해</td>
<td>to someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>인삼차</td>
<td>ginseng tea</td>
<td>한테</td>
<td>(younger</td>
<td></td>
<td>person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>요즈음</td>
<td>these days</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그저 그래</td>
<td>so-so</td>
<td>개인지도</td>
<td>tutoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>요새</td>
<td>lately</td>
<td>일 주일</td>
<td>one week</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>방학</td>
<td>vacation</td>
<td>가르치다</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>할 일</td>
<td>things to do</td>
<td>4시간씩</td>
<td>every four</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무슨 일</td>
<td>what kind of work</td>
<td>힘들다</td>
<td>difficult</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

**Two forms of the verb “to bring something for someone” in Korean**

These are 드다주다 and 드다 드리다. 드다주다 is used when a speaker requests something for himself or when he gives something to someone who is younger or lower in social status. However, 드다 드리다 is used when a speaker does so for someone whose social status is higher or to anyone present to whom he wants to look polite.

물 좀 갖다 주세요. 
네, 곧 갖다 드리지요.
이 책 저분한테 갖다 
드리세요.

Please bring me some water.
Yes, I'll bring it right away.
Please take this book to him over there.

**The modification marker - 은/을**

This marker is used when a noun follows action and adjectival verbs, and indicates the future tense.

마실 물이 없어요.
읽을 책이 많아요.
이번 주말에 할 일이 많아요.

There is no water to drink.
There are many books to read.
I have a lot of work to do this weekend.
**The postposition -한테**

This postposition is used to indicate the receiver of a certain action of a verb. It accompanies a person. Note that the postposition -에게 is interchangeable with -한테.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Sentence</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>누구한테(에게) 편지 써어요?</td>
<td>Who did you write a letter to?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형님한테(에게) 편지 써어요?</td>
<td>I wrote the letter to my older brother.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The obligation ending -아(어/여)야 되다**

This ending is used to express an obligation or necessity in respect of a certain event, when attached to the verb stem of the sentence. It is interchangeable with the ending -어(아/여)야 되다.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Sentence</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>지금 이 음식을 먹어야 돼요.</td>
<td>Now I have to eat this food.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내일은 날씨가 좋아야 돼요.</td>
<td>Tomorrow's weather should be good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매일 개인 지도를 해야 돼요.</td>
<td>I have to do private tutoring every day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The noun particle -써**

This particle is attached directly to a number or to any number made with the noun counter. It means “each,” “respectively,” “apiece.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Sentence</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하루에 두 시간씩 한국어 공부해요.</td>
<td>I study the Korean language for two hours every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학생들은 셋씩 도서관에 와요.</td>
<td>Students come to the library in groups of three.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The exclamatory ending -군요**

This ending is used with any verb and indicates a speaker’s delight, wonder, astonishment, or surprise. It is interchangeable with -ㄴ(는/은)네요 explained in Lesson 6. The suffix 는 can be inserted when an action verb precedes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Sentence</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>오늘은 눈이 많이 오는군요!</td>
<td>It’s snowing a lot today!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어제 일요일인데, 학교 갔었군요!</td>
<td>Yesterday was Sunday, but you went to school!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
이 일은 아주 힘들겠군요!  This work must be very difficult to do!
이 물건값은 아주 싸군요!  This merchandise is very cheap (inexpensive)!

Exercises

9 You are at a Dabang and the waiter is ready to take your order. Ask him to bring you a cup of coffee.

10 You borrowed a book from a friend which he checked out of the city library. You tell him that you will return it there when you've read it.

11 A friend asks you how you’re doing these days. Respond to his question.

12 A friend asks whether you are free today. Tell him that you have a lot to read for a meeting.

13 You bought office supplies at a stationery store and one of your office colleagues wants to borrow some of them. Tell him that you gave them to the following people:

a pencil to a younger brother
b ruler to an uncle
c notebook to an older sister

14 You are tutoring two high school students (Young Hee and Jae Min) in English conversation. A friend asks how many hours you tutor each student every week. Respond to his question, according to the information below!

a Young Hee for three hours
b Jae Min for two hours

15 Someone is telling you that he works 12 hours a week. Express your surprise, saying that the job must be extremely tiring.

16 A friend of yours persuades you to go out to a park this Saturday afternoon. Tell her that you have the following things to do:

a take a rest
b read a book
c go to a movie with your brother
17 Translate the following dialogue into colloquial English:

A: How've you been doing these days?
B: I've been busy.
A: What kind of work makes you that busy?
B: I've got lots of meetings these days.
A: Oh, really? It must be very tiring.

18 Complete the dialogue below:

A: 요즘 바쁜 일 있어요?
B: 무슨 일이 그렇게 많아요?
A: 일주일에 몇 시간씩 가르치세요?
B: A: 그럼, 힘들겠군요.

19 Reading passage ⚫⚫ Jane meets a friend of hers at a Dabang (Korean tearoom). She is very late. After talking together about something to do over the weekend, she goes home. Because of the traffic problem, she changes her mind and goes home by taxi instead of by bus. Try to figure out what kind of weekend plan they discussed and why Jane took a taxi home.

제인(Jane)은 어느 금요일 저녁에 친구와 다방에서 만났다. 친구가 30분 늦게 와서 많이 기다려야 했다. 친구는 커피를 마시고, 제인은 인삼차를 한 잔 마셨다. 둘은 주말여행에 관하여 이야기했다. 집으로 돌아오는 길에 버스를 탈는데, 교통이 막혀서 버스가 움직일 수 없었다. 그래서, 도중에 버스에서 내려서 택시를 타고 집으로 돌아왔다.

Key Words

늦게 오다 arrive late
주말여행 weekend trip
관하여 about
길 way
막히다 be jammed
움직이다 move around
도중에 on the way
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• check in at a hotel
• use the long negation form -지 못하다
• use the sentence endings -밖에 없다, -아(어/여)보다.
• use the postposition -(으)로

Dialogue 1  Mr. Anderson and his friend, Mr. Taylor, try to check in at a hotel for a couple of nights. They prefer to take rooms with single beds at an affordable price

 접수계: 어서 오세요, 몇 분이십니까?
 앤더슨: 두 사람인데, 방 있어요?
 접수계: 오시기 전에 예약하셨어요?
 앤더슨: 아니요. 예약하지 못했어요.
 접수계: 그래요. 잠깐만 기다리세요.
 앤더슨: 아, 빈 방이 몇 개 있습니다.
 그럼에, 침대방은 없고 온돌방밖에 없습니다.
 태일러: 앤더슨, 온돌방이 괜찮겠어요?
 앤더슨: 나는 온돌방에서 못 자는데요.
 태일러: 그럼, 다른 호텔로 가 보겠습니다.
 접수계: 예, 다음에 또 들르세요.

Vocabulary

몇 분 how many persons (honorific)
방 room
예약하다 make a reservation
운돌방 room with built-in stone heat
관찮다 OK
다른 different
Language points

**The long negation form** -지 못하다

Two ways of negating Korean verbs have been introduced. These were -안 (short form) seen in Lesson 1 and -지 않다 (long form) seen in Lesson 10. In this lesson another negative marker 못 is introduced. This negative ending, mostly used with action verbs, indicates “one’s failing or inability to do something,” as in the sentence “John failed to pass the test because he didn’t study hard.”

There are two forms of negation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Short form</th>
<th>Long form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다</td>
<td>못 가다</td>
<td>가지 못하다</td>
<td>unable to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>못 먹다</td>
<td>먹지 못하다</td>
<td>unable to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽다</td>
<td>못 읽다</td>
<td>읽지 못하다</td>
<td>unable to read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The negative sentence ending** -밖에 없다

This ending, followed by a noun, means “nothing but,” “only.”

교실에 여학생밖에 없습니다. There are only girls in the classroom.

온돌방밖에 없습니다. We have nothing but the Ondol rooms.

**The compound form** -아(어/여) 보다

This form is used to express a trial or experiment by the action verbs of a sentence, as in “Do you want to try on this sweater?” The tense is reflected in the second verb 보다, meaning “to see how it is.”
The postposition -(으)로

This postposition denotes a destination to which one moves or to which something moves. The equivalent in English is “toward.” It is interchangeable with the postposition -에 explained in Lesson 1. -(으)로 is inserted for nouns ending in a consonant (except 은).

정문 앞에 있는 분식집으로  Let’s go to the snack house by the main gate.
갑시다.
이 버스는 어디로 갈니까? Where does the bus go?
그 사람은 어디로 갔어요? Where did the man go?

Exercises

1 A clerk at the hotel counter asks whether you made a room reservation. Respond to his question, saying that you failed to do so. Use the long negation form in your answer.

2 A friend wants you to return the book you borrowed. Tell him that you haven’t finished reading it. This time, use the short negation form.

3 You have been busy all morning and a colleague asks you whether you have had a coffee break. Tell her that you haven’t taken it.

4 Someone asks you whether you saw the movie ET. Tell him that you couldn’t watch it because you were too busy.

5 A friend of yours wants to borrow ₩50,000 from you. Tell him that you only have ₩30,000 in your pocket.

6 You want to try on a nice-looking sweater at the store. Ask the salesman whether you can do so.

7 Someone asks you whether you went to Dream Land in Seoul. Tell him that you have not been there yet.
8 The hotel clerk asks you whether you can take the Ondol room (floor-heated room). Tell him that you can’t sleep on the Ondol floor.

9 A hotel clerk says that all the rooms are booked for the night. Suggest that you and your friend go to another place across the street.

10 Reorder the words of the dialogue to make sense:

A: 두개, 침대방, 있어요?
B: 여기는, 없으니까, 침대방이, 여관으로, 다른, 가 보세요
A: 그럼, 있어요?, 온돌방은
B: 세개, 온돌방은, 있습니다, 예

11 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: How many are you?
B: We’re three.
A: Would you (mind) check(ing) into the Ondol room?
B: No. Since we’re foreigners, we’ll check into rooms with beds.
A: We don’t have any rooms with beds.
B: Really? We’ll go to the other hotel nearby.

Culture point
There are lots of modern hotels in downtown Seoul. If you buy a tourist map of Seoul city at a newsstand, you can easily locate these hotels on the map because they are marked in both Korean and English. The major ones providing good quality, Western-style service are the Sinra Hotel, Chosun Hotel, Hotel Lotte, and Seoul Hilton Hotel, to mention only a few. These hotels are equipped with modern facilities such as all-year-round heating and air-conditioning, in-house restaurants and bars, laundry, beauty and barber shops, and agencies offering domestic travel services and foreign exchange services.

You can choose between various classes of hotel, depending on your travel budget. Deluxe hotels such as the Chosun or the Seoul Hilton have rooms ranging from $400 (double) up to $500 a night, while first-class hotels such as Sinra and Lotte charge an average of $300 a night for a double. Of course, second- and third-class hotels charge much less, at $100 a night. All rooms have private bathrooms, two single beds or one double bed, phones, radio and TV sets, and closets.
You don’t have to be afraid, even if your Korean isn’t good enough, to have a brief conversation with a Korean waiter or waitress. Most hotel personnel (if not all) are able to speak some English, and they are also trained to help foreign travelers.

It is always a good idea to study the pamphlets for foreign tourists in Korea before you get there. These pamphlets are usually available at any of the Korean Consulate offices, located in the major cities of the U.S.A. Your knowledge of hotels and of other tourist needs and interests will help make your choice easier and your stay more enjoyable.

**Dialogue 2**  
Mr. Anderson and Mr. Taylor go to an inn across the street and succeed in checking into a big room with two single beds

에이드리슨: 이 여관에 빈 방 있어요?
접수제: 방이 있을지 모르겠어요. 잠깐만 기다리세요.
예, 온돌방과 침대방 다 있습니다.
Vocabulary

여관 | inn | 하 nắm만 | only one
모르겠다 | do not know | 여권 번호 | passport number
다 있다 | have all | 몇 호실 | what room number
저회들 (하고) 싶다 | we (humble) | 406호실 | room #406
want/wish | 열쇠 | key

Language points

The sentence ending - 를(을)지 모르겠다

This ending changes the final verb and is used to incorporate an interrogative or "if"-sentence into a main sentence. The English translation is "One knows/doesn't know whether/if+sentence." With all action verbs, it expresses the future tense.

언제 회의가 있을지 모르겠어요. I don't know when the meeting is held.
그 분이 집에 있을지 몰라요. I don’t know whether he will be staying home.
그 일이 어떻게 될지 모르겠어요. I don’t know how that work will turn out.

The sentence ending - 고 싶다

This ending expresses a speaker’s wish to do something. It is equivalent to the English infinitive phrase “want to do,” or “would like to do.”
What kind of food would you like to have?
I want to buy new shoes.
What would you like to do right now?

The noun particle -호실

This particle, when attached to a Sino-Korean number, indicates a room number.

3호실이 어디니까? Where is room #3?
102호실은 어느 쪽입니까? Which is the way to (Which direction is) room #102?

Exercises

12 A colleague asks you if you know when a staff meeting will be. Using -지불라요, tell her that you do not know.
13 Next month you expect to get a huge bonus in your pay check. A friend of yours wonders how you will spend it. Tell her that you want to spend it by doing the following things:
   a buying a new suit
   b buying a birthday gift for your girlfriend
   c buying three books
14 Before arriving at the hotel, you made a room reservation. Ask the clerk what number your room is.
15 One of your friends checked in prior to your arrival at the hotel. At the hotel counter you wonder which room he checked into. Ask the clerk his room number.
16 A group of foreigners are at the hotel counter, and you are there as an interpreter for them. Ask the clerk whether there are rooms with beds available for five people.
17 Tell the clerk that you need two rooms with beds and one Ondol (floor-heated) room.
18 Translate this dialogue into Korean:
A: Do you have any rooms with beds in this hotel?
B: No, we’ve only Ondol rooms here.
A: How much do you charge for one Ondol room?
B: It’s ₩30,000.

19 Complete the following dialogue:
A: 이 여관에 침대방 있어요?
B: 
A: 두개만 주세요.
B: 
A: 한 방에 3만원짜리는 없어요?
B: 
A: 그럼, 한 방에 4만원짜리 주세요.
B: 

20 Reading passage  Mr. Anderson was about to check in at the hotel reception. But he could not check in because he forgot to bring something that he was supposed to have with him. So, he made a phone call to a friend who knew where it was. With his friend’s help, he cleared up the problem. Try to figure out what he forgot to bring with him and how his friend helped him.

Mr. Anderson was about to check in at the hotel reception. But he could not check in because he forgot to bring something that he was supposed to have with him. So, he made a phone call to a friend who knew where it was. With his friend’s help, he cleared up the problem. Try to figure out what he forgot to bring with him and how his friend helped him.

Key words

출장가다 go on a business trip
투숙하다 check in (at a hotel)
여권 passport
서랍 drawer
번호 number
숙박부 information sheet
침대방 room with (Western-style) beds
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• talk about characteristics of Korea’s four seasons
• use the nominalizing suffix -기
• use the sentence endings -는 때 가 있다, -네요 -already
• use the compound verbs -러 가다/오다, 아(어/여)지다

Dialogue 1 ねん  Roy Kim has recently arrived in Seoul and is talking with his tour guide, Jenny Lee

로야 한국의 기후는 어때요?
제나 대체로 따뜻하고, 사계절이 분명해요.
로야 봄은 언제부터 시작되어요?
제나 봄은 3월부터 시작되지요. 봄이 되면 꽃이 피기 시작해요.
로야 3월에는 눈이 오는 때가 없어요?
제나 그럼요. 3월이면 벌써 따뜻해져요.
로야 미국에서는 4월에도 눈이 오는 때가 있어요.
제나 그래요? 평강히 춥겠네요.
로야 예, 춥지요. 그래서, 사람들은 여름이 빨리 오기를 기다려요.

Vocabulary

기후 weather 월(달) month
따뜻하다 warm 눈 snow
사계절 four seasons 눈이 오다 it snows
분명하다 distinctive 벌써 already
봄 spring 미국 America
언제부터 since when 굉장히 extremely
Language points

The nominalizing suffix -기

This suffix is attached to the stem of action verbs and expresses the gerund (“-ing”) or “to”-infinitive in English.

| 시작하다 | begin | 시작하기 | beginning |
| 공부하다 | study | 공부하기 | studying |

The nominal marker converts a verb into a noun equivalent, so that the nominalized expression -기 functions grammatically like a noun. Thus, it can be taken as either the subject or object of certain types of verb. Here are a few examples where -기 is used as the object of a verb:

시작하다

begin to do something or
begin doing something

비가 오기(를) 시작했다.

It began to rain.

그는 아침을 먹기 시작했다.

He began to have breakfast.

g마다리다.

People wait for the rain to stop.

사람들은 비가 멈추기를 기다려요.

Students wait for class to finish.

The sentence ending -는 때가 있다

The suffix 는, when attached to the stem of action verbs, modifies the noun 때 (“time”) and means “there is a time when someone does something.”

Jane은 학교에 지각하는
Jane is often late for school.

때가 많다.

It sometimes snows in April.
Another exclamatory ending -네요

Two exclamatory endings have been introduced so far: -은/는네요 in Lesson 10 and -(는)군네요 in Lesson 13. Here is another ending of a similar kind which indicates a speaker's delight, wonder, surprise, etc.

학생들이 많이 지각했네요!
106번 버스가 지기에 오네요!
내일은 날씨가 좋네요!

Many students are late!
Bus #106 is coming over there!
Tomorrow's weather will be good!

Exercises

1 You are standing in the hallway, and someone you know asks what you are up to. Tell him that you are waiting for the following people to come out of a meeting in progress:

a Jane Kim
b Thomas Moon
c Teacher Lee

2 You have been very busy and haven't seen one of your friends for weeks. He asks what kept you so busy. Tell him that you have started the following:

a reading a Korean novel
b studying the Korean language
c dating a girlfriend

3 A Korean student asks you what the weather is like in April in your hometown. Tell him that, even in April, it sometimes snows.

4 You are delighted because the bus you were waiting for just came to a halt at the station. Say that bus #123 just came in.

5 You are at a meeting and you realize many of your colleagues are absent. Show your surprise.

6 Correct your friend's grammar:

a 그는 여름이 오기까지 기다리다.
b 갑자기 비가 오기로 시작했다.
c Jane은 때로는 술을 많이 마시는 빈가 있다.
7 Rearrange the words of the dialogue so they make sense:

A: 눈이, 지역도, 여름에, 오는, 있다
B: 오기를, 가을이, 사람들이, 기다려요
C: 한국의, 사계절은, 기후가, 분명하다

8 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What are Korean summers like?
B: It’s usually hot.
A: Does it rain a lot?
B: Yes, it rains a lot because there’s a monsoon in the summer.

9 Complete the following dialogue:

A: 한국의 가을 날씨는 어떻게?
B:
A: 사람들은 가을에 무얼 해요?
B:
A: 수영하려 가는 사람들도 있어요?
B:

**Culture point**

Korea’s weather belongs to the temperate zone and its four seasons are quite distinct. The warm spring weather is heralded by gold-banded lilies blooming from mid-March in the southern region to early April in the central region, which includes Seoul. A sudden cold wave in spring may, however, take many people by surprise. Summer begins in June when the Korean peninsula is under the influence of the monsoon. The Korean summer is notorious for its long rainy spell, which usually takes up the whole of July: “hot and humid” is characteristic of Korea’s summer weather. It is during this season that typhoons may at times threaten to inflict heavy damage on the Korean peninsula. After the dreary days of summer, autumn arrives. Its weather is very mild and the sky high and clear. Travelers must not miss the ripening Korean apples and pears in the orchards in autumn. Winter usually begins in mid-November in the northern region. At times heavy snow may accumulate but for the most part winter is dry and cold.

**Dialogue 2**

Roy asks Jenny about Korea’s autumn weather

로이: 한국의 가을 날씨는 어떻게?
제니: 가을 날씨는 맑고 시원해요.
로이: 가을에 사람들은 어디로 놀러가요?
제니: 어떤 사람들은 산에 가고, 어떤 사람들은 낚시를 가요.
로이: 산에는 무엇 하러 가요?
제니: 단풍 구경하러 가요.
로이: 그럼, 언제부터 추위지기 시작해요?
제니: 우리 지역은 12월 초순부터 추위지기 시작해요.
로이: 아, 밤이 어두워지고, 비가 오는 것 같아요.
제니: 맞아요. 안으로 들어 가야겠어요.

Vocabulary

가을, 날씨, 마다, 시원하다, 놀려가다, 어떤, 산, 낚시질, 단풍, 구경하다, 지역
autumn, weather, clear, cool, go to hang out, some/certain, mountain, fishing, foliage, watch, region

12월, 초순, 밝, 어두워지다, 비가 오다, 맞다, 안으로, 들어가다, 사람
December, first one-third of a month, outside, get dark, it rains, correct, (toward) inside, go inside, people

Language points

The compound verb -러 가다/오다

This ending combines some action verbs with the verbs 가다/오다
and means “go/come to do something.”

학생들이 도서관에 공부하러 가요.
친구들이 우리 집에 놀러 왔어요.
운동장에 배구하러 갔어요.

Students go to the library to study.
Friends came to my house to do nothing.
They went to the field to play volleyball.
**The question word** 어든

This word modifies the noun which follows it. Its translation depends upon the context. For example, in a declarative sentence the word means “certain or some,” but in a question it means “what kind of . . .”

어떤 학생들은 도서관에서 공부하고 있어요.  
어떤 학생이 복도에 있어요.  
어떤 학생이 복도에 있어요?  

Some students are studying at the library.  
A certain student is standing in the hall.  
Which student is standing in the hall?

**The personal pronoun** 우리

Koreans tend to use 우리 (“we”) to indicate their family relationships with someone, instead of using 저/나 (“I”). They believe that a sense of collectivity or sharing about one’s family is extended not only to the home itself, but also to other social institutions (e.g., school, company, restaurant, etc). Therefore, the Korean personal pronoun 우리 translates into English as “we” or “I.”

우리 집에 내일 저녁에 놀러 오세요.  
우리는 내일 아주 바빠요.  
우리 회사 직원들이 일요일에 소풍가요.  

Please come and visit my home tomorrow evening.  
We are very busy tomorrow.  
The staff of our company go on a picnic (on) Sunday.

**The compound verb ending** -아(어/여) 지다

This verb ending is attached to the stem of the verb and adds a dependent meaning to the given verb. It indicates a process of change or “becoming” from one condition to another.

많다 many 많아지다 become more  

\[ \rightarrow \text{The number of people increased (lit. became larger)} \]
The sentence ending -ㄴ(은/는) 것 같다

This ending is attached to the stem of the verb and means “It seems/appears to be...” When the suffix -ㄴ(은) is attached to descriptive verbs and the linking verb (이다/ 아니다), it expresses the present tense. But when the same suffix is attached to action verbs, it expresses the past tense. Finally, the suffix -는 is used with action verbs to create the present tense.

- 이것은 비싼 것 같다. This seems (to be) expensive.
- 오늘은 날씨가 좋은 것 같다. Today's weather seems (to be) good.
- 저 사람은 한국사람인 것 같다. That person appears to be a Korean.
- 저 사람은 한국 사람이 아닌 것 같다. That person does not appear to be a Korean.
- 그 학생이 책을 읽은 것 같다. The student seems to have read the book.
- John이 미국에 돌아간 것 같다. John seems to have returned to America.
- 밤에 지금 비가 오는 것 같다. It seems to be raining outside now.

Exercises

10 On your way to Chongro, you run across a friend of yours on a Seoul street. Respond to his question, “What are you doing in Chongro?” Tell him that you are going to do the following things there:
a buy books  
b meet friends  
c spend time with friends

11 You have lost contact with Harry lately, and someone asks you his whereabouts. Tell him that he seems to have done the following:

a returned to America  
b broken up with his girlfriend  
c gone on a business trip  
d fallen ill

12 Someone asks you whether there are students studying at such a late hour in the library. Tell him that particular students from America are studying there.

13 You did not have a chance to meet one of your colleagues lately. When you unexpectedly meet him, you notice that he looks younger than before. Compliment him.

14 Say that, now summer has begun, the days are getting longer.

15 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What are Korean autumns like?  
B: It’s usually clear.  
A: Does it often snow in autumn?  
B: No, it starts to snow in December.  
A: What do people do in autumn?  
B: They go mountain climbing.

16 Complete the following dialogue:

A:  
B: 한국의 가을 날씨는 보통 아래요.  
A:  
B: 단풍구경하러 설악산에 가겠어요.  
A:  
B: 아니요. 친구들과 같이 갈 거예요.

17 Reading passage The following text discusses Korea’s four seasons. It suggests things to do in each. Try to figure out the advantages and disadvantages of each season.

한국의 기후는 대체로 사계절이 분명해요. 봄에는 산과 들에 꽃이 만발해서 아름다워요. 사람들은 봄에 산으로 소풍을 많
이 가요. 여름에는 햇고 비가 많이 와서 별로 좋지 않아요. 여름에는 근처에 있는 수영장에 수영하러 자주 가요. 시원한 가을에는 많은 사람들이 등산을 가요. 그러나, 한국의 겨울은 아주 춥고 눈도 많이 내려요. 겨울이 되면, 스키장에 스키타
러 가요.

**Key words**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>대체로</th>
<th>generally</th>
<th>수영장</th>
<th>swimming pool</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>분명하다</td>
<td>distinctive</td>
<td>등산가다</td>
<td>go mountain climbing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>반발하다</td>
<td>in full blossom</td>
<td>내리다</td>
<td>fall down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소풍가다</td>
<td>go on a picnic</td>
<td>스키장</td>
<td>ski slope</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• talk about the place you are staying
• make a phone call
• use the indirect speech ending -고 하다
• use the relative clause marker -니(은/는) 것
• use the sentence ending -라고 하다
• use the 비. 억 irregular verbs

Dialogue 1 番がSamuel Kerry has taken a position as a CNN
news reporter at the Korea branch in Seoul a couple of months ago
and is staying at International House. Youngsik Lee, a Korean staffer,
is curious to know about his new life at International House and
asks him some somewhat personal questions.

영식: 언제부터 외국의 숙소에서 사셨어요?
쌤: 2개월 전부터 거기에서 살고 있어요.
영식: 그 숙소는 회사에서 가까워요?
쌤: 예, 아주 가까워서 걸어 다니고 있어요.
영식: 숙식비는 비싸요?
쌤: 사람들은 비싸다고 해요.
독방을 쓰는데, 한달에 70만원이에요.
영식: 매우 비싸네요! 한국음식은 잘 드세요?
쌤: 매운 것은 잘 못 먹어요. 볼고기는 아주 좋아요.
영식: 그럼, 다음에 제가 볼고기 한번 살게요.
쌤: 좋습니다.

Vocabulary

숙소 living quarters
생활 single room
사랑하다 live
한 달 one month
Language points

The noun suffix -전부터

This suffix, when attached to the noun implying time, expresses “since,” “ago,” “before.”

언제부터 한국어 배우기 (Since) When did you begin to learn Korean?
시작했어요?
어제부터 수영 배우기 I began to learn swimming(since) yesterday.
시작했어요.

The indirect speech ending -고 하다

This ending is used to report in an indirect way what someone has said. Declarative indirect speech is made by attaching the ending -고 하다 to the end of the quoted sentence. It is equivalent to the expression, “They say that . . .”

내 친구는 내일 러시아에 They say that one of my friends goes to Russia tomorrow.
간다고 해요.
내일은 날씨가 나쁘다고 해요. They say that the weather will be bad tomorrow.

Peter는 한국 여자와 결혼했다고 They say that Peter married a Korean woman.
해요.

However, when the quoted sentence ends in linking verbs 이다/아니다, the indirect speech form -라고/아니라고 하다 is used to express the present tense.

그분은 장관이다. He’s a minister.
그분은 장관이라고 합니다. They say that he’s a minister.
그것은 전짜 돈이 아니다. It’s not real money.
그것은 전짜 돈이 아니라고 한다. They say that it’s not real money.
The compound verb -마다

This verb is combined with certain types of verb and indicates repetitive or ongoing action. Its literal meaning is “come around,” “go around.”

도서관에 걸어 다녀요. I walk to the library.
회사까지 걸어 다녀요. I walk to my company.
지하철역에서 집까지 걸어 다녀요. I walk to my home from the subway station.

Irregular verbs ending in 움

When a vowel follows, the final consonant 움 of the stem in some verbs changes into ㅗ. Note: the inserted vowel ㅗ is contracted into the next vowel -어, yielding the syllable 위.

가볍다 light → 가벼워요
덥다 warm → 더워요
어둡다 dark → 어두워요
가깝다 near → 가까워요

The verbs 좋다 and 좋아하다

좋다 is an adjectival verb. It does not need an object after it. Since it is adjectival, the verb 좋다 can take the relative clause marker -ㄴ(은) to indicate the present tense. Its meaning is equivalent to English “good,” “OK.” The verb 좋아하다, on the other hand, is an action verb which does require an object. This verb can take the relative clause marker -는 for the present tense and -ㄴ(은) for the past tense. Its meaning is equivalent to “like” or “love.”

내일은 날씨가 좋아요. Tomorrow’s weather is good.
뉴욕에는 좋은 식당이 있어요. There are good restaurants in New York City.
Jane은 값이 비싼 청바지를 입어요. Jane wears expensive jeans.
나는 머리가 긴 여자를 좋아해야요. I like a girl who has long hair.
나를 좋아하는 남학생이 점심을 사 주었다. The male student who loves me bought me lunch.
Exercises

1 Someone compliments you on your excellent Korean. Tell him that you only started learning Korean two years ago.

2 A fellow swimmer at the pool compliments you on your technique. Tell her that you learned to swim ten years ago.

3 Someone asks you about Dong Woo’s whereabouts. Tell him that you heard that Dong Woo:
   a returned to America
   b was sick
   c disappeared

4 Someone at work asks how you get to the office every morning. Tell him that you get to work by walking, since your home is near the company’s offices.

5 Correct your friend’s grammar:
   a 그는 사과를 좋다.
   b 그 사람을 사과를 좋아한다.
   c John은 한국이 좋아해서 한국 여자와 결혼했다.
   d 그 여학생은 내가 좋은 학생이에요.

6 Someone asks you where you live. Tell him that you live:
   a in an apartment near the company
   b at International House
   c at a relative’s house

7 Someone wants to give you a big treat, and he asks you what kind of Korean food you like best. Tell him that you like Pulgogi best.

8 You have moved to a new place, and a friend asks you about it. Translate this dialogue into Korean:

A: Where do you live right now?
B: I live at the Hoam Faculty House.
A: Is it near the place where you work?
B: No, it’s quite far away. So, I go to work by bus every morning.

9 Complete the following dialogue:

A: 지금 어디에서 사세요?
B:
A: 숙식비는 비싸요?
B:
A: 한국 음식은 어때요?
B:
A: 무슨 음식을 가장 좋아 하세요?
B:
A: 그럼, 오늘 저녁에 내가 갈비 한 번 살게요.

**Culture point**
When a foreign traveler enters Seoul, he may wonder what major media services are available. There are two English language-based daily newspapers – the *Korea Times* and the *Korea Herald*, which are available at most newsstands and stores. You can usually get a copy of the *New York Times*, *Los Angeles Times*, *Chicago Tribune*, and *London Times* at the counter of major first-rate hotels. Korea has four TV networks, all broadcasting in Korean. These are KBS, MBC, SBS, and EBS. There is also the American Forces Korea Network (AFKN), which broadcasts exclusively in English on behalf of the U.S. military stationed throughout the country. AFKN’s programs are not limited to military events: AFKN also broadcasts a diverse range of world news and sports 24 hours a day. Reception for AFKN is not always good outside Seoul.

You can find a public telephone on almost every street corner in Seoul. For a local call, deposit two Korean coins (₩10) for three minutes. But to make a long-distance call to Korean cities, you can use larger coins like the ₩50, ₩100, and ₩500. For an international call, check the country and area codes on the information sheet attached to the telephone booth and dial the numbers as directed. For example, when one wants to make a call to the U.S.A. one has to dial a series of numbers: 001 (or 002) – 1 – area code – phone number. To make an international call, it is convenient to use a telephone card, which one can purchase at designated places. Telephone cards are sold for ₩3,000, ₩5,000, and ₩10,000.

**Dialogue 2**  
Samuel Kerry returns from work to International House and asks the clerk whether he has received any phone messages for him.

샘: 아저씨, 저한테 오늘 전화 온 것 있었어요?
아저씨: 예, 부산에 있는 친구한테서 전화 왔었어요.
샘: 뭐라고 했어요?
어저씨: 저녁에 다시 (전화) 전다고 했어요.
그런데, 별로 급하지 않다고 했어요.
샘: 그래요? 제가 먼저 전화를 해 봐야겠어요.
여보세요. 거기 부산이지요?
대화자: 예, 누굴 찾으세요?
샘: 저 민선이 친구인데, 있으면 바꿔 주세요.
대화자: 민선씨요? 여기에 그런 분 안 게시는데요.
샘: 거기가 333국의 7592번 아닙니까?
대화자: 예, 아니예요. 여기는 332국의 7592번이예요.
샘: 그래요? 전화 잘못 걸어서 미안합니다.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>전화</th>
<th>phone call</th>
<th>누굴(누구를)</th>
<th>whom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>전화운전</td>
<td>phone call that</td>
<td>바꿔주다</td>
<td>let me speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>came</td>
<td></td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부산</td>
<td>Pusan</td>
<td>국</td>
<td>station number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한테서</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>번</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저녁/밤</td>
<td>evening</td>
<td>잘못 걸다</td>
<td>dial the wrong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화 걸다</td>
<td>make a phone</td>
<td>미안하다</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>call</td>
<td></td>
<td>sorry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>급하다</td>
<td>urgent</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

The relative clause marker - 난(은/는) 것

This pattern is equivalent to the relative clauses “the one which . . .,” “that which . . .,” or “what . . .” as in the sentence “This is the one which I lost in a train.” The modifying phrase, placed before the word 것 “thing,” takes - 난(은) for an adjectival verb (present tense) and for action verbs (past tense). It also takes -는 for action verbs (present tense).

제일 값이 싼 것을 사세요.
제일 모양이 좋은 것을 사세요.
우리가 먹은 것은 너무 맛있어요.
우리는 회장님이 말씀하시는 것을 노트에다 써요.
Please buy the cheapest one.
Please buy the one which looks the best.
What we had is too hot.
We write in a notebook what the chairman says.
**The postposition -한테서**

This is used to denote a person as the source or origin of an action. But for an inanimate source or origin the postposition -에서 is used.

오늘 아침에 친구한테서 전화가 왔어요.  
여머님한테서 편지가 왔어요. 
편지가 집에서 왔어요. 
전화가 고향에서 왔어요.

This morning a phone call came from my friend.  
A letter came from my mother.  
A letter has come from my home.  
A phone call came from my hometown.

**The sentence ending -라고 하다**

This ending is attached to nouns of various types and indicates “This is (called) . . .” (lit. “This is being called as . . .”).

이게 뭐예요?  
이것은 칠판이라고 해요.  
저는 박상석이라고 해요.  
이 단어는 한국어로 뭐라고 해요?

What’s this?  
We call this a blackboard.  
I am Sang Seok Park.  
What do you call this word in Korean?

**The ㄹ irregular verb**

Lesson 7 introduced some ㄹ irregular verbs which drop the consonant before the consonant ㄹ. The verb 걸다 also obeys this deletion rule when either ㄹ or ㄹ follows it.

전화 걸었어요.  
전화를 전 사람을 누구지요?  
전화를 전다고 했어요.

I made a phone call.  
Who’s the person that made a phone call?  
(He) said that he will make a phone call.

**Answering negative questions in Korean**

Special attention should be paid to the ways in which Koreans respond to a negative question. When they respond with “예,” it
means that what the speaker has asked is correct. However, when they respond “아니오” it means that what he/she has asked is incorrect i.e., conflicts with the answer.

Are you going to the library tonight?
Yes, I am.
No, I am not.

Couldn’t you buy a Korean dictionary?
No, I couldn’t.

Aren’t you going to the library now?
Yes, I am.

The contracted form 누굴

When the question word 누구 takes the object marker -을/을, only the consonant ㄹ is carried underneath the second syllable 구. This process yields the contraction 금.

역에서 누구를 만났어요? Who did you meet at the station?
역에서 누굴 만났어요? Who did you meet at the station?

Korean telephone numbers

A typical Korean number consists of the station and individual telephone number (e.g., 496–3879). One can read these whole numbers as they are or the single digit numbers by using the Sino-Korean method. Note that the suffix -에 is inserted after the station number. It is equivalent to a dash (–) in English.

What’s your home phone number?
It’s 496–3879.

It’s 496–3879.

When you make a phone call from smaller local cities to Seoul, you have to dial “02” first, and then the rest of the numbers. You can find city codes for all other Korean cities in the telephone directory.
Exercises

10 Someone sees you reading a letter and asks you who it came from. Tell him that it came from your younger brother.

11 Someone sees you reading a letter and asks you where it came from. Tell him that the letter came from your home.

12 You do not know the Korean names of the objects you have in front of you. Ask what these words are in Korean:
   a belt
   b purse
   c pocket-size notebook

13 Someone asks you whether you did the following, and you are sure that you didn’t, or wouldn’t, do them. How would you respond?
   a 어제 교회에 갔어요?
   b 지난 일요일에 Casino에 안 갔어요?
   c 내일 한국 영화 보지 않겠어요?
   d 육개장 안 먹어 봤어요?

14 You return to the guest house where you are staying and the clerk tells you there was a phone call for you. Ask him the name of the person who called you.

15 A Korean businessman treats you to an excellent meal. He asks you how you liked the food. Tell him that what you had was delicious.

16 You are holding a staff meeting, and you think that it’s a good idea for staff members to write down what you say. How do you tell them to do so?

17 You dial the telephone number for your friend’s house, and you are told that you have dialed the wrong number. How do you apologize to the person answering the phone?

18 You answer the phone, and the person at the other end of the line wants to speak with someone you do not know. How can you tell the person that he has the wrong number?

19 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: Is there a phone message for me?
B: Yes, a guy from KBS called you.
A: Do you have his phone number?
B: Here it is.
A: I must call him right away.
B: It’s already seven o’clock. He must have left work for the day.
A: You’re right. I’ll call him tomorrow morning.

20 Complete the following dialogue:

A: 여보세요? 거기에 김문수씨 계세요?
B: 
A: 거기가 653에 3546번 아님니까?
B: 
A: 아, 알겠습니다. 미안합니다.

21 Reading passage 髹 Samual Kerry took a job as a CNN news reporter in Seoul and arrived at Kimport Airport on a humid summer day. He took a taxi and checked into International House. However, it took him more than two hours because he had a couple of problems. Try to figure out what problems he ran into and how he overcame them.

Samuel Kerry는 CNN 방송국 기자로 서울지국에 부임하게 되었다. 어느 뜨거운 여름날 그는 김포공항에 도착한 후에, 택시를 타고 외국인 숙소까지 갔다. 가는데 교통이 너무 밀려서, 택시가 빨리 달릴 수가 없었다. 또한, 택시 운전사는 Kerry씨의 영어 발음을 잘못 알아 들고, Intercontinental Hotel에 내려 주었다. 거기에 있는 경비원 아저씨의 도움을 받아, 다시 택시를 타고 외국인 숙소로 갈 수 있었다. 그러나, 공항에서 숙소까지 3시간이 넘게 걸렸다.

Key words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>영어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>방송국</td>
<td>broadcast station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기자</td>
<td>reporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지국</td>
<td>branch bureau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부임하다</td>
<td>take a new position (job)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통</td>
<td>traffic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>발음</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경비원</td>
<td>guard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• accept an invitation to a Korean home
• express likes and dislikes
• use the nominalizing marker -기
• use the sentence endings -(으)면 좋아요. 아(여/여)도 되다. -(는)편이다
• use the conjunctions -만, -(을)때에
• use the irregular verbs
• use the sentence ending -(어 보이다)

Dialogue 1  Mr. Kim, section chief of a trading company, invites several of his staff members, including Ms. Jones, to a party. She works as copy editor for the English section of the company’s magazine. Since she is not familiar with Seoul streets, he gives Ms. Jones a hand-sketched map of the area near his house

김: 존스 선생님, 이번 주말에 저의 집에서 파티하는데 오실 수 있어요?
존스: 아, 그러세요? 그런데, 그 날이 무슨 날이에요?
김: 아뇨, 아무 날도 아닙니다.
그저 회사 직원들을 초대해서 저녁을 대접할까 합니다.
존스: 몇시에 갈까요?
김: 저녁 6시에 오세요.
존스: 김과장님댁 주소는 어떻게 되지요?
김: 네, 한남동 185번지입니다.
존스: 한국집은 찾기가 힘들어요. 약도 있으면 좋겠어요.
김: 맞아요. 약도하고 주소 여기 있습니다.
(약도를 보면서) 우체국에서 저의 집이 보입니다.
존스: 찾아갈 수 있을 것 같아요.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>주말</td>
<td>weekend</td>
<td>백</td>
<td>hourse (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파티하다</td>
<td>throw a party</td>
<td>주소</td>
<td>address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무슨 날</td>
<td>what kind of date</td>
<td>한 남동</td>
<td>Hannam-Dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아무 날도</td>
<td>no particular date</td>
<td>번지</td>
<td>street number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>직원</td>
<td>staff</td>
<td>약도</td>
<td>sketched map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>초대하다</td>
<td>invite</td>
<td>우체국</td>
<td>post office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과장님</td>
<td>section chief</td>
<td>대접하다</td>
<td>treat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

**The sentence ending -(으)면 좋겠다**

This ending is used to express a speaker’s wish for something to happen or be done to his or her advantage. Its meaning is equivalent to the expression “I wish/hope...”

비가 안 오면 좋겠다.  I hope it won’t rain.
사람들이 파티에 많이 오면 좋겠다. I hope a lot of people come to the party.
돈이 많이 있으면 좋겠다. I wish I had a lot of money.

**The nominalizing marker -기**

Lesson 15 introduced two uses for the nominalizing suffix -기. In the third kind, when it is attached to the verb stem, this marker converts action verbs into the verbal noun forms “-ing,” “to do something.” This changed form can take a subject or object case marker in a sentence.

공부하다 study → 공부하기 studying
달리다 run → 달리기 running
읽다 read → 읽기 reading

시험 공부하기가 쉽지 않아요. It’s not easy studying for the test.
그는 어제부터 시험 공부를 시작했어요. He began studying for the test (since) yesterday.
내 동생은 책 읽기를 좋아해요. My younger brother likes reading books.
The verbs 보다/보이다

보다는 an active verb which is usually used when a speaker intends a voluntary action ("look at", or "watch"). In this usage, the object case marker (-을/를) can be taken. But 보이다 is the passive form of a verb used for his or her involuntary state of being "visible." In this case, the subject case marker (-이/가) can be recovered.

어제 회사에서 Jane 봤어요? Did you see Jane at the company yesterday?
저 큰 건물(을) 보세요. Look at the big building over there.
저 큰 건물(이) 보임니까? Can you see the big building over there?

Exercises

1 A friend of yours asks you what you hope for in the New Year. Tell him that you want three things:
   
a to become richer
b to be promoted
c to take a round-the-world trip

2 Imagine that you have recently been relocated to a Seoul office. Your supervisor wants to know what kinds of problems you are facing in your new life in Seoul. Tell her that it is difficult to do the following things:
   
a take a taxi
b have a good night’s sleep
c find American food

3 Mr. Lee, section chief in your office, asks you whether you can come to a party this coming Saturday. How do you accept his offer?

4 When you are invited to a party by Mr. Lee, you don’t know the area where he lives. Tell him that you need a sketched map.

5 You have an appointment with a Korean businessman, and you’ve had detailed directions from him over the phone. Tell him that you are confident you’ll find his place.
6 Correct your friend’s grammar:

a 저기에 빨간 건물이 빌어요.
b 저기 있는 큰 건물을 보여요.
c 큰 건물이 보는 쪽에서 우리 집은 왼쪽에 있습니다.

7 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: What are you going to do over the weekend?
B: I’m free.
A: Can you come over to my house?
B: Is it a special day?
A: No, I just want to spend (some) time with you.

8 Complete the following dialogue:

A: 오늘 저녁에 뛰 하세요?
B: 
A: 선악이 없으면, 우리 집에 가서 맥주 한 잔 해요.
B: 
A: 그럼, 내일 저녁은 어때요?
B: 
A: 내일 일이 끝난 후에 지하 다방에서 만나요.
B: 

**Culture point**

When a foreigner works at a Korean or American company in Korea for any period of time, the chances are that he or she is likely to be invited to a Korean home at some time or another. When such a visit occurs, it is quite acceptable/normal to bring the host(ess) some type of gift. But a foreigner may be surprised that the host(ess) does not unwrap the gift or make any comment on it in front of him or her. One reason for this behavior is that many Koreans do not like looking frivolous by revealing what the gift is to others who may be around at the time when it is given. Their attitude is that only a child gets a gift from a giver, opens it, and then uses it at once. The Confucian tradition trains Koreans to aspire to look very reserved, respectful, calm, even if there is something that is distracting them. Another possible reason is the concept of face-saving. At the moment when the gift is being opened, the recipient may unconsciously indicate that the gift is somehow not suitable. In this case, the host or hostess’s attitude might make the visitor feel uncomfortable – and thus “face” would be lost. A foreigner should, therefore, not feel embarrassed when a Korean host accepts a gift and puts it away somewhere on a shelf.
Dialogue 2 Ms. Jones arrives at Kim’s house and hands him a small gift. At the party Ms. Jones compliments him on the variety of tasty-looking food on offer

김: 존스 선생님, 어서 오세요.
존스: 예, 김과장님, 여기 조그만 선물을 가져 왔습니다.
김: 아이구, 그냥 오셔도 되는데요.
존스: 별거 아닙니다.
김: 차린 것은 변변치 않습니다만, 많이 드세요.
존스: 차린 음식들이 너무 맛있어 보입니다.
김: 청찬해 주셔서 감사합니다. 존스 선생님, 매운 반찬 잘 드세요?
존스: 잘 먹는 편이에요.
김이가 맵지만, 먹을 때에 찬물을 많이 마시면 되거든요.
김: 야, 존스 선생님은 머리가 비상하네요!
존스: 아니에요. 제 친구가 가르쳐 주었어요.

Vocabulary

조그만 tiny 메운 반찬 hot side-dishes
선물 gift 가져오다 bring
아이구 oh! 변변치 않다 not good
그냥 just 편 side
별거 not that 김치 Kimchi
차린 것 things that one 몬다 hot and spicy
displayed 물 water
맞 taste 비상한 extremely smart
청찬하다 praise 가르쳐 주다 teach

Language points

The  ❖  irregular verbs

Some adjectival verbs conjugate irregularly, in that the final consonant ❖ of the stem is subject to deletion before such consonants as 려,려,로 and the vowel  odio.

빨갛다 red → 빨간
하얗다 white → 하얀
노랗다 yellow → 노란
조그맣다 tiny → 조그만
이렇다 be like this → 이런
The permissive sentence ending
-아(어/여)도 되다

This ending is used to express the concession “may.” Other words, such as 좋다 or 편찮다 can follow -도. They mean either “it’s all right” or “it doesn’t matter.”

회의에 늦게 와도 됩니다. It’s all right even if you are late for the meeting.
내일 다시 와도 됩니다. It’s all right even if you come again tomorrow.
그 일을 내일 해도 되요. You may do that work tomorrow.

Another contrastive conjunction -만

Lessons 8 and 10 introduced two kinds of contrastive conjunctions -지만 and -(으)나. This conjunction is attached to a clause ending in -니다 and means “although” or “but.” The second conjunction tends to be more formal than the first one.

그 분이 회의에 오셨습니까만, 만나지 못했습니다. Although he came to the meeting, I couldn’t meet him.
교통사고가 났습니까만, 운전사는 다치지 않았습니다. Although the traffic accident took place, the driver did not get hurt.

The sentence ending -어 보이다

This ending is attached to the stem of adjectival verbs and means “seem” + adjective.

그 사람은 키가 커 보입니다. He seems tall.
그 음식은 아주 매워 보입니다. The food seems very hot and spicy.

The temporal conjunction -ㄹ/을 때에

This conjunction is used with any verbs and indicates adverbial expressions of time. Its meaning is equivalent to “at the time when . . .”
Please bring your book when you come to school.
Let's go to the park if (when) the weather is good.
Let's not buy it if (when) the merchandise is expensive.

Note: This conjunction can also take such particles as -가/-이, -을/-을, -도, -부터.

It's time to study.
At times, it snowed in the spring.

**The sentence ending -ㄴ(는) 편이다**

This sentence ending is used with any verb and indicates one's habitual action in doing something when we want to distinguish between what one can do and what one cannot do. Thus, it is equivalent to “...can do something well.”

Peter씨는 매운 음식을 잘 먹는 편이다.
Peter can eat hot and spicy food well.

나는 한국에 오랫동안 살았는데도, 한국음식을 잘 못 먹는 편이에요. Although I lived in Korea for a long time, I can't eat Korean food well.

**Exercises**

9 At the doorstep of Mr. Kim's house, you hand him a gift. As a matter of courtesy, you want to tell him that it is only small. What would you say?

10 You have invited Mr. Kim to your house for a year-end party. He calls you to tell you that he is going to be late because of a traffic jam. Tell him that it's all right to come a bit late.

11 You are led to a table full of good food. You want to compliment the hostess on her excellent cooking skills by saying that all of the food looks tasty. What would you say?

12 You have borrowed a Korean dictionary from a friend, and he tells you that he needs it back. Tell him that you are going to return it to him when you see him tomorrow.
13 At a party, one of the guests asks you whether you like eating Korean food. Tell him that you do.

14 Rearrange the words of the following dialogue to make sense:

A: 채식하지, 사장님이, 회의에, 출근했지만, 않았다
B: 맞, 음식이, 보인다, 차린, 있어
A: 맵지만, 김치가, 잘, 먹는, 저는, 편이에요.
B: 물을, 마셔요, 많이, 김치를, 매운, 먹을 때는

15 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: Which Korean food do you like best?
B: I like something that is not too hot.
A: Do you like Chapchae?
B: Of course I do.
A: How about Kimchi?
B: I don’t like Kimchi too much, because it is so hot.

16 Complete the following dialogue:

A: 어제 어디 갔어요?
B:
A: 무슨 날이었어요?
B:
A: 홍과장님댁에서 한국음식 많이 먹었어요?
B:
A: 무슨 음식이 가장 맛이 있었어요?
B:
A: 저는 채식을 하기 때문에, 불고기는 잘 안 먹어요.

17 Reading passage One Saturday evening James Goldsmith is invited to Mr. Lee’s house for a social gathering of the staff in his office. On his way to Mr. Kim’s house, he drops into a flower shop and buys a dozen roses as a gift for Mr. Kim’s wife. When he arrives at Mr. Kim’s house on time, he is taken by surprise to find that no one else is there. Try to figure out how James has gone wrong and how he overcomes his problem.

어느 토요일 저녁에 James Goldsmith 씨는 김과장님댁에 초대 받았다. 김과장님댁에 가는 길에 꽃가게에 들려서 사모님께 추려고 장미한 다발을 샀다. 선물을 가지고 6시에 김과장님댁에 도착했을 때 손님들이 없었다. 이상해서 김과장님께 물어봤을 때, 손님들이 7시에 온다고 했다. 그때부터 둘이 손님들이 온 때까지 비디오 영화를 보았다. 7시에 회사 직원 손님이 전부 와서, 그때부터 채미 있는 파티가 시작되었다.
**Key words**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>초대받다</td>
<td>be invited</td>
<td>한 다발</td>
<td>one bunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꽃가게</td>
<td>flower shop</td>
<td>이상한</td>
<td>strange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들리다</td>
<td>drop by</td>
<td>비디오</td>
<td>videotape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사모님</td>
<td>honorific word</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>referring to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>someone’s wife</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• talk about moving into a Korean apartment
• use the sentence endings -면서요?, 네(은) 모양이다.
  -곤 하다. 네(은) 계획이다
• use the sentence endings -로(을) 필요가 있다. 네(은)지가...되다
• use the conjunctions -자마자, 네(은) 결
• use the sentence ending -로(을) 시간이 있다

Dialogue 1  ○ ○ John Armstrong has recently moved into a new apartment. Mr. Chang, a colleague, asks him about it

장: 새 아파트로 이사했다면서요?
암스트롱: 예, 한 달 전에 이사했습니다.
장: 평수가 어떻게 됩니까?
암스트롱: 30평인데 서민 아파트입니다.
장: 암스트롱씨, 돈을 많이 번 모양이군요.
암스트롱: 아니오. 회사에서 무료로 임대 해 준 거예요.
장: 동네 사람들은 만나 뵐어요?
암스트롱: 예, 이사하자마자 옆집 사람들을 초대해서 한 틀 냈어요.
장: 동네는 조용합니까?
암스트롱: 아니오. 때로는 밤 늦게까지 소란스러운 때도 있어요.
장: 저회 동네도 마찬가지에요.
여름에는 밤 12시까지 차 소리가 나근 해요.

Vocabulary

아파트  apartment    동네  neighborhood
이사하다  move    옆집  next door
평수  Pyong    한 틀 내다  give a treat
(= 3.954 square yards)
Language points

The sentence ending -면서요?

This interrogative ending, when attached to the declarative ending (-다) of a sentence, is used to ask a listener to confirm knowledge about a certain fact or event which a speaker has acquired from someone or a public source (e.g., the media).

그 사람 영국에 갔다면서요?
I heard that he went to England. Is it true?

어제 동대문 시장에서 불이 났다면서요?
I heard that a fire broke out at the Dongdaemoon market yesterday. Is it true?

However, when the sentence ends with a linking verb (or verbs) (-이다/아니다), the last syllable of the verb changes to -라, to which the different ending -면서요? is attached.

저분이 회사 사장님이라면면서요?
They say that he is a president of the company, am I right?

저 건물은 67층이라면서요?
They say that building has 67 stories, am I right?

The sentence ending -ㄴ(은) 모양이다

This ending is attached to the stem of the action verb and indicates the likelihood that some event has happened. Its meaning is equivalent to “it seems to be . . .,” “it looks like . . .,” or “it seems as if . . .” It may take other suffixes (ㄴ/은,눈,을) to express,
respectively, the present tense for an adjectival verb, the present
tense for an action verb, and the future tense for an action verb:

내 친구는 어제 회의에 늦게 온 모양입니다.
It seems that my friend was late for the meeting yesterday.

차가 고속도로에서 고장난 모양입니다.
It seems that the car was broken down on the highway.

요즈음 차 값이 싸 모양이에요.
These days, it seems that cars are inexpensive.

학생들이 아직도 북도에서 기다리는 모양입니다.
It seems that students are still waiting in the hall.

이번에 김과장은 비싼 차를 살 모양입니다.
It seems that Section Chief Kim will buy an expensive car.

**The conjunction -자마자**

This conjunction is used to express one action that is immediately
followed by another. It is equivalent to various English expressions
(“as soon as . . . ,” “no sooner . . . than . . . ,” “immediately after . . . ,”
etc.).

학교에 가자마자 도서관에 갔어요.
As soon as I went to school, I went to the library.

도서관이 열자마자 학생들이 펼쳐져 들어갔다.
As soon as the library was open, students rushed in in groups.

**The sentence ending -곤 하다**

This ending is attached to the stem of an action verb and expresses
a speaker’s repetitive action in the present tense. It is equivalent
to the English words “often,” “occasionally,” “frequently.”
Note that the tense is reflected in the verb 하다.

John은 일요일도 회사에 나가곤 해요.
John often goes to work, even on Sundays.

4월에도 눈이 많이 오곤 해요.
It often snows a lot, even in April.
Armstrong씨는 미국에 있을 때, 무역회사에서 일하곤 했어요. When he was in America, Mr. Armstrong used to work for the trading company.

**The compound verb** 한 턱 내다

This verb means "give one a big treat." You may hear this type of expression very often once you start working with Korean colleagues.

새로 이사했으니까, Because I moved (home), I’ll have to give you a big treat.
한 턱 내야지요. When I’m promoted next month, I’ll given you a big treat.
다음 달에 승진하면
한 턱 내겠어요.

**The expression** 마찬가지다

This expression is used to reflect what a speaker has already said and is equivalent to "much the same."

오늘 비가 많이 왔어요. Today it rained a lot.
내일도 마찬가지예요. It’s (going to be) much the same tomorrow.
요즈음 수박 값이 비싸요. These days, watermelon is expensive.
참외 값도 마찬가지예요. Melon is much the same.

**Exercises**

1 You have heard that Mr. Armstrong recently moved to a new apartment, and you want to make sure this is true. What would you ask him?

2 While you are riding in a taxi, you notice a high tower-block to your left. You remember having heard that it’s a 46-story building. Ask the driver whether that’s true.

3 A friend of yours has bought a new apartment as well as a new car. He seems to have made a fortune. How might you comment on it?
4 A colleague is looking for Mr. Chang, and you saw him go out a minute ago. Tell your colleague that Mr. Chang went out as soon as the meeting was over.

5 You are being interviewed for a receptionist job, and the interviewer asks about your work experience. Tell him that you used to be a secretary at City Hall.

6 Someone asks what you spend time doing at weekends. Tell him that you frequently go climbing with a group of friends.

7 You have moved to a new apartment and you think that it would be a good idea to invite your office colleagues to a celebratory party. Tell them that you would like to give them a big treat.

8 A friend tells you that the outside of the apartment where she lives is very noisy up until 10 P.M. Your place is much the same. What would you say?

9 Correct your friend’s grammar:
   a Jane은 다음 달에 일본에 갔 모양이에요.
   b 내 동생은 집에 음차마자 화장실에 들어갔다.
   c 여름에 날씨가 더우면, 사람들은 옷이 벗곤 한다.

10 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
A: I heard that you’ve moved to an expensive apartment. Is this true?
B: Yeah. It’s three months since I moved in.
A: How big is it?
B: It’s about 25 Pyong. It’s OK for the three of us in our family.
A: Have you met any people in the apartment complex?
B: Not yet. But I’m going to invite a group of people for a getting-to-know-you party.
A: When you do, please invite me as well!
B: Of course!

11 Complete the dialogue:
A: 언제 새 아파트로 이사 갔어요?
B:
A: 아파트 주민들은 만났어요?
B:
A: 그럼, 한번 사람들을 초대해서 한 턱 내야지요.
B:
A: 빨리 하면 좋아요.
B:
**Culture point**

Most Korean citizens live in apartments in an apartment complex. Mammoth apartment complexes cluster around Seoul. Even a tiny-looking apartment cell (equivalent to approx. 100 sq. feet) costs $100,000 (equivalent to 25 Pyong), so many Koreans buy a smaller apartment unit and then move to a bigger unit as the household income increases. Koreans have not adopted a rental system for apartments, as Americans and British people have. They usually buy an apartment, small or big, depending on its affordability. In this case, middle-class Koreans can borrow 20 percent of the full cost from their bank. They usually pay the remaining amount as a cash down-payment. In many instances, buyers may end up borrowing a large amount from family members or close friends, unless they are rich enough to pay for their apartments entirely in cash. There are still many traditional Korean houses, which older people seem to prefer to live in. The price of these houses is a bit lower than those of modern apartments in an apartment complex, where a whole range of facilities, ranging from cleaners to drugstores, are within walking distance.

**Dialogue 2**

A colleague asks Mr. Armstrong about the new apartment he’s recently moved into. Mr. Armstrong says that it is messy and the furniture needs to be arranged properly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>김</th>
<th>새로 이사간 아파트의 짐 정리하는 데 되었어요?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>암스트롱</td>
<td>아니오, 짐이 다 정리되지 않아서 영망입니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김</td>
<td>가구도 새로 사셨어요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>암스트롱</td>
<td>아직 살 시간이 없었어요. 내일 정사람과 같이 나가서 살 계획입니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김</td>
<td>방은 몇 개나 돼요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>암스트롱</td>
<td>온돌방이 들 있고, 용접실이 하나 있어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김</td>
<td>소파와 찬장은 살 필요가 없어요?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>암스트롱</td>
<td>그것들은 산 지가 얼마되지 않아서 아직도 깨끗해요. 집이 정리되면, 구경할 겸해서 놀러 오세요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김</td>
<td>시간나면 한번 놀러 갈게요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>김</td>
<td>moving stuff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정리되다</td>
<td>in order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>움직임실</td>
<td>living room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찬장</td>
<td>cupboard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Language points

The sentence ending - 은(을) 시간이 있다

This ending is attached to the stem of any action verb and indicates that a speaker has time to do something. 있다 replaces 있다 to express “no time to do something.”

오 후에 회의할 시간이 있어요.
I have time to attend the meeting in the afternoon.

바빠서 책 읽을 시간이 없어요.
Because I’m busy, I don’t have time to read books.

일요일에도 동산할 시간이 없어요.
I don’t have time to climb, not even on Sundays.

The sentence ending - 은(을) 계획이다

This ending is attached to the stem of any action verb and indicates that a speaker has a plan to do something.

주말에 부산에 갈 계획입니다.
I’m planning to go to Pusan over the weekend.

다음 달에 새 아파트로 이사할 계획입니다.
I’m planning to move to a new apartment next month.

The sentence ending - 은(을) 필요가 있다

This ending is attached to the stem of any action verb and indicates one’s need to do something. The English equivalent is “one needs to do...” The case marker 가 is optional. The opposite meaning can be obtained by substituting 있다 with 있다.
I need to study a lot when I have a test.
I need to sleep a lot when I am tired.

**The sentence ending - 뒤(은)지가...되다**

This ending is used to express the time lapse in a noun clause (“It is ... since a certain action started.”). The noun clause, which forms the first part of this ending, is always used as the subject of a sentence and is followed by the predicate, which specifies the length of time.

한국에 오신지(가) 몇 개월 됐어요?
새 집으로 이사한지(가) 일년 되었어요.
한국말을 공부한지(가) 2년이 됐습니다.

How many months is it since you came to Korea?
It’s one year since I moved to my new house.
It’s two years since I studied (the) Korean (language).

**The conjunction - 을(을) 겠**

This is used to express the idea of one action accompanying another at the same time (“to engage in two activities at the same time.”).

물도 마실 겠, 차에서 내립시다.
Let’s get out of the car and drink water.

시내 구경도 할 겠, 종로에 나갑시다.
Let’s go out to Chongro and tour around downtown.

The noun 겠 may also be used to put two nouns in a row.

이 건물은 사무실 겠 주택이예요.
This building is used as both an office and living quarters.

The verb 겠하다 means to hold more than one job at the same time.

그 분은 과장을 겠하고 있습니다.
He is acting section chief (i.e., in addition to his original job).
Exercises

12 Mr. Lee, section chief of the office, wants to arrange a picnic for this coming Saturday. He asks you whether you have anything to do this weekend. Tell him politely that you have no time to go on a picnic.

13 A friend of yours wants to go shopping at Midopa (one of the old and best department stores in Seoul) with you, and you have a previous engagement. Tell her that you don’t have time to go shopping.

14 Everyone in the office knows that the car you drive frequently breaks down, and a colleague wonders if you need a new car. Tell her that you plan to buy a new one.

15 You have moved to a new house, and someone asks you whether you need new furniture. Tell him that you have furniture that still looks brand new.

16 Mr. Lee wonders if he should attend a staff meeting for a certain project, and you think that he doesn’t have to. Tell him that he does not have to attend the meeting this time.

17 You recently moved to a new condominium. You haven’t let everyone in the office know this. Miss Lee, who has heard about it, asks you when you moved. Tell her that it’s a year since you moved to your new apartment.

18 You want to persuade a friend to go to Myongdong (one of the busiest shopping streets in the eastern part of Seoul). He is not convinced. Tell him that you can catch a movie and at the same time do some shopping at the department store.

19 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
A: How long is it since you moved (to a new house) in Kangnam?
B: It’s about three months.
A: Everything in your house is all in order?
B: No, it’s still messy.
A: Show me your house when it’s ready.
B: Sure, I’d be glad to.

20 Complete the dialogue:
A: 집 정돈 다 됐어요?
B: 
Reading passage  
William Ryan, a news reporter, has bought a spacious new apartment in Kangnam, in the southern part of Seoul, and moved into it over a month ago. Colleagues in the office helped him move. Although Mr. Ryan has a plan to invite his colleagues to his apartment for a party, he thinks that he is not ready yet. When reading the passage, try to figure out how big his apartment is and why he is not ready to invite his colleagues.

William Ryan씨는 최근에 40평짜리 아파트를 사서 강남으로 이사 갔다. 지난 달 일요일에 회사 친구들이 이사를 도와 주었다. 이사 한 지가 한달이 넘었는데, 집은 아직 엉망이다. 다음 주에는 옵절실 가구와 소파 세트를 사려고 가구점에 갈 계획이다. 집 정돈이 끝나면 이사를 도와 준 회사 직원들을 초대해서 한 탁 내려고 한다.

Key words

recently Kangnam (“south of Han river”) (all) messy furniture store arrangements give (one) a (big) treat
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• buy gas at a gas station  
• have a car repaired at a service station  
• use the sentence endings -르(을) 펼하다, -거든요, 아(여/여)
• use the conjunctions -(여) 라서, 동안에

Dialogue 1  Sandra Hopkins is driving Su Jin Kwon along the bank of a river to find a suitable picnic spot. Sandra happens to notice that the gas is running dangerously low. They look for a gas station nearby and fill the car full of unleaded gasoline.

Sandra:가스가 거의 다 빼어지고 있는 것 같아요.
Su Jin:그래요. 이 근처는 농장이라서 주유소가 없는데요.
Sandra:그럼, 어디로 가야지요?
Su Jin:저기 길 모퉁이 보이죠?
Sandra:저기 지나서 좀 가면, 새로 생긴 주유소가 있을지 몰라요.
Su Jin:한번 그리기 볼시다.
Sandra:아, 저기 새마을 주유소가 보이네요!
Sandra:나도 뻗어요. 큰 일 난 뻗 했어요.
(주유소에서)
Station Worker:여서 오세요. 무엇을 도와 드릴까요?
Sandra:무연회발유 4리터만 넣어 주세요.
Station Worker:예, 예. 창문 청소는 안 하십니까?
Sandra:안해도 돼요, 아직도 깨끗하기도요.

Vocabulary
가스  gas  새마을 주유소  New Village Station
거의  almost
Language points

*The causal conjunction* -이(-이) 라서

A few conjunctions used to combine a cause clause with an effect clause have been introduced already. These are 아(어/여)서 in Lesson 3, -(으)니까 in Lesson 12, and -기 때문에 in Lesson 13. However, *this* conjunction is directly attached only to nouns.

> 방학이라서 도서관에 학생들이 없어요.  
> Because it's a vacation, there are no students in the library.

> 조금만 가게라서 수입이 많지 않아요.  
> Because it is tiny, the gross income of the store isn’t that big.

*The sentence ending* -ㄹ(을) 뿐 하다

This ending is used to indicate that a certain action has nearly taken place, but did not actually happen for some reason. The tense is shown on the end of the verb phrase. Its English equivalent is “to come close to doing/happening.”

> 너무 늦게 일어나서 회의에 늦을 뻔 했다.  
> Because I woke up late, I was almost late for the meeting.

> 가스가 다 빠져서 큰일 난 뻔 했다.  
> Because (my car) ran out of gas, I almost had a serious problem.

*The compound verb form* -아(어/여)주다

The verb 주다 can be combined with certain action verbs and implies that a speaker renders some service to the hearer. This
compound verb is used when the speaker requests some service to be rendered or when he or she personally provides the service to the hearer who is lower in social rank and younger in age.

읽다 read → 읽어 주다 read for someone
가스를 넣다 put in gas → 가스를 넣어 주다 put in gas for someone
그 아이한테 책을 읽어 주세요. Read the book for that child.

The semi-causal sentence ending - 거든요

This ending, when attached to any verb, provides a slight cause for the sentence immediately preceding the one containing the verb.

주말에 여행 못 갔어요. 비가 많이 왔거든요.
I didn’t take a trip. It’s because it rained a lot.

저녁에 도서관에 안 갔거예요. 피곤거거든요.
I’m not going to the library. It’s because I’m tired.

Exercises

1 A friend asks why he didn’t see you last week. Tell him that, since you were on vacation last week, you didn’t come to work.

2 You and a friend of yours are out on the beach to beat the summer heatwave. Your friend is very surprised to see tens of thousands of people swarming along the seafront. Tell him that, because of the hot summer, a lot of people have come to the beach.

3 You overslept one morning. Later, one of your colleagues asks you how your morning was. Tell her that you were almost late for a meeting.

4 At a gas station an attendant asks you how much gas is left in the tank. Tell him there’s almost none and you almost ran into a serious problem.

5 At a gas station, an attendant asks you how much gas you want to buy. Ask him for four liters.

6 A group of people in the office went on a picnic last Sunday, and you missed it. Monday morning, someone asks you why you didn’t come. Tell him that you were sick.
7 A friend of yours compliments you on the pretty dress you are wearing. Tell him that it’s a brand-new dress.

8 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: Do you need gas?
B: Yes, I do. Please put in 2 liters.
A: No problem. Do you want your windshield wiped?
B: No, I don’t think so, because I cleaned it this morning.
A: Oh, I see.

9 Complete the dialogue:

A: 기름이 다 넣어진 것 같은데요.
B: 모르겠어요.
A: 저기 경찰 아저씨는 알거예요.
B: C: 저는 경찰이 아니예요. 군인이예요.
A and B:

Culture point
It is generally no problem for a first-time visitor to Korea to cope with the public transport systems. But you can choose to rent a car. However, many foreigners are reluctant to drive even a rental car because the traffic laws are different and visitors are not familiar with the roads. To rent a car, you should meet the following three requirements: 1, have an international driver’s license with at least one year’s experience; 2, be over 21 years old; 3, have a valid passport. It is customary for visitors who wish to hire a personal driver to pay his meals and hotel expenses. The cost of hiring a driver in Seoul is as high as w50,000 for 10 hours’ service a day. One can obtain detailed information about car-rental service in major Korean cities by contacting the rental agencies themselves.

Dialogue 2

Sandra and Su-Jin were enjoying a sunny afternoon lying on the grass. Suddenly it clouded over, so they packed their things and hurried to their car. On the way back home, Sandra thought that the car was not running too well. So, they pulled the car over for a checkup at the repair shop.

선드라: 여보세요. 제 차가 고장이 난 것 같은데 한번 봐 주시겠어요?
정비원: 테스트를 한번 해 보도록 하죠.
센드라: 아까 달리는데 이상한 소리가 나기는 했어요.
정비원: 라지에타에서 물이 새는 것 같군요.
센드라: 물이 쏟여요?
정비원: 예, 라지에타 물이 다 빠져 버렸군요.
센드라: 아저씨, 빨리 고칠 수 없어요?
정비원: 글쎄요, 적어도 세 시간은 걸리겠는데요.
수잔: 더 빨리 안 되겠어요?
저녁들은 두 시간 후에 친구를 만나기로 했거든요.
정비원: 그럼, 두 시간 후에 오세요. 그 전에 오면 안 돼요.
센드라: 고치는 동안에 저기 찻집에 있을거에요.
정비 끝나면, 연락 주세요.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한국어</th>
<th>영어</th>
<th>영어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>센드라</td>
<td>Sandra</td>
<td>후에</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고장이 나다</td>
<td>broken down</td>
<td>새다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바주다</td>
<td>check</td>
<td>빠지다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>테스트</td>
<td>test</td>
<td>고치다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아가</td>
<td>a while ago</td>
<td>적어도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이상한</td>
<td>strange</td>
<td>동안에</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>라지에타</td>
<td>radiator</td>
<td>찻집</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나다</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>정비</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

The sentence ending -아(어/여) 버리다

This ending is used to express the completion or the exhaustion of a certain event by a verb in use. It translates as “to finish up doing something.”

이 일을 한시간 내에 끝내 버립니다. Let’s finish (up) this work within an hour.
편지를 읽고 씩어 버렸어요. I read the letter and tore it up.

The sentence ending -기로 하다

This ending is used to express a speaker’s decision or agreement with himself or another person in a certain context. It is equivalent to “agree to” or “decide to.”
I agreed to meet my friend at 2 P.M. in front of the company.
I decided not to go to the library tomorrow night.
By what (mode of transport) did you decide to go to Seoul?

The sentence ending -기는 하다

This ending is used to express a speaker’s intention to acknowledge the message of the main verb, but to refer to another message by way of contrast. It is equivalent to the expression, “It’s true, but . . .”

저는 서울을 좋아하기는 합니다. It’s true that I like Seoul, but . . .
금시간에 갔은 비싸기는 해요. It’s true that a golden watch is expensive, but . . .
그 여자는 미인이기는 합니다. Everybody knows that she is a real beauty, but . . .

The sentence ending -(으)면 안 되다

This ending is used to express the prohibition of a certain act by a speaker. It is a negative counterpart of the Korean expressions “-어야 하다” or “-어도 좋다,” and is equivalent to “should not,” or “must not.”

너무 늦게 가면 안 돼요. You must not go too late.
공원 풀밭에 들어가면 안 됩니다. You must not enter the grass area of the park.

The temporal conjunction -동안에

This conjunction is used to express the duration of an action or process. The English equivalent is “while doing something.”

내가 여기에서 기다리고 동안에 무언가 하겠어요? While I wait here, what are you going to do?
밥 먹는 동안에 전화가 두번 왔어요. While (one) ate, two phone calls came.
Exercises

10 You have a lot of things to do piled up in the office. Suggest that your colleague finishes (up) doing three things for you this afternoon.

11 You have a date with a friend at Chongro. Someone in the office asks you when you are supposed to meet him. Tell him that you agreed to meet at 4 P.M.

12 The weather has been so unpredictable that you have had difficulty deciding how to travel. One day a friend asks you what you have decided on. Tell him that you have made up your mind to go by train.

13 You have been living in Seoul for a number of years. One day an American newcomer to your company asks you how you like living in Seoul. Tell him that you like living in Seoul, but you have some reservations.

14 Recently, a male college graduate joined the company. Everybody is envious of his intelligence and hard work, but to you he seems somewhat impolite. Someone in the office asks you whether you like him. Tell your colleague that he is a good worker, but not the type of person you like.

15 In the park children try to jump over a picket sign that reads “Keep off the grass.” Tell them not to go in there.

16 Your younger brother watches TV for three hours a day. Tell him that he shouldn’t watch TV for so long.

17 You are secretary to the company president. One day, when he was in a meeting, you received three phone calls for him. After his meeting, he asks you whether anybody called. Tell him that, during the meeting, three people called.

18 You are at the service station and your car has broken down. Tell the manager that your car needs a checkup.

19 At the repair shop, a mechanic asks you what kind of problem you are having with you car. Tell him that you heard a very strange noise while driving sometime ago.

20 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:
  A: How can I help you, sir?
  B: My car seems to have a problem.
A: What kind of problem is it?
B: The engine feels very hot.
A: Let me check. Ah, the coolant has all leaked out.

21 Complete the dialogue:

A. 차 고칠 수 있어요?
B.
A. 잘 모르겠는데요.
B.
A. 몇 시간 걸리죠?
B.
A. 안 되겠는데요.
두 시간 후에 친구하고 약속이 있거든요.

22 Reading passage  Sandra Hopkins has recently bought a new car, a Lemans made in Korea. She is very proud of it, so she and her friend go for a long drive. But while on their way, the car runs into a problem. Try to figure out how serious the problem is and how it affects their plans for the day.

Sandra Hopkins recently bought a new car, a Lemans made in Korea. She is very proud of it, so she and her friend go for a long drive. But while on their way, the car runs into a problem. Try to figure out how serious the problem is and how it affects their plans for the day.

Key words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>르망차</th>
<th>Lemans car</th>
<th>기분</th>
<th>(one's) mood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>생산되다</td>
<td>be manufactured</td>
<td>신나다</td>
<td>get excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조마조마하다</td>
<td>nervous</td>
<td>겁이 낀다</td>
<td>is scared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>직장 동료</td>
<td>colleague</td>
<td>걱정이 되다</td>
<td>is worried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교외</td>
<td>suburb</td>
<td>재수</td>
<td>luck</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
By the end of this lesson you should be able to:
• talk about your illness
• use the sentence endings -ㄴ(은)입니, -는지 물어보니 다, -야(여)밝니, -(으) RecognitionException, -(으)라고 생각되니 다
• use the conjunctions -(으)면서, -(으)여도, -(으)면 테니
• use the noun suffix -ㄹ(을) 정도로
• use the particle -도록
• use the idiomatic expressions 한 숨도 못 죽자: 아파죽겠다

Dialogue 1  Anthony Miller fell ill last night, so he couldn’t get a wink of sleep. The next morning he rushed to the emergency room of a private hospital and asked whether he could be examined immediately.

간호사: 어디가 아프세요?
밀라: 저 머리가 아프고 음 몸이 쓰셔요.
간호사: 열은 어때요?
밀라: 열이 40도까지 올라간 적도 있어요. 열이 많아서 밤에도 한 숨도 못 잔어요.
간호사: 그래요? 응급환자를 받을 수 있는지 물어 볼게요.
밀라: 잠깐 기다리세요.
간호사: 예, 감사합니다.
간호사: 오늘은 감기 환자가 너무 밀려 있어요.
밀라: 두시간 후에 다시 올 수 있어요?
밀라: 지금 너무 아파 죽겠어요.
간호사: 그럼, 이리 빨리 들어 오세요.

Vocabulary

아프다 hurt
머리 head
응급환자 emergency patient
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>온 몸</td>
<td>all body parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도(온도)</td>
<td>centigrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올라가다</td>
<td>go up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밤새도록</td>
<td>until the end of the night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 숟</td>
<td>one wink of sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰시다</td>
<td>ache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감기</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밀려있다</td>
<td>backlogged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아파 죽겠다</td>
<td>dying of pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간호사</td>
<td>nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밀려</td>
<td>Miller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4도</td>
<td>40°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물어보다</td>
<td>ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열</td>
<td>fever</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Language points**

**The sentence ending -의 적이 있다**

This ending is used to express one’s experience in the past. Its meaning is equivalent to the expression “one has done something.” It is interchangeable with the sentence ending -의 일이 있다.

I have been to Japan.

Mr. Kim has borrowed money from the bank.

I have had Mexican food, (and) it’s delicious.

I have had Mexican food, (and) it tasted fantastic.

**The particle -도록**

This ending is attached to the verb and indicates the continuation of the action of a verb to a specified limit. It is equivalent to the preposition “until.”

This morning I overslept until the sun rose.

I read a book until (the) morning.
The sentence ending -는지 물어 보다

This ending is attached to the end of an interrogative clause within the main sentence. The same ending is used for past, present, and future tense. The English equivalent is “one asks when/if...”

I asked when Mr. Kim would return to his office.

I asked when the train arrived at the station.

I asked when he would come here.

The sentence ending -아(어/여) 있다

This ending is attached to the stem of such intransitive verbs as “go,” “come,” “stand up,” “sit down.” It expresses the location of an object or the continuation of an action that has already taken place.

There is a book on the desk.

A lot of cars are backed up on the streets.

The noun suffix -ㄹ(을) 정도로

This suffix is attached to a noun and indicates an extent to which the verb of a first clause affects one. The English equivalent is “to the extent that...”

I suffered a headache that was (lit. to the extent that it was) almost killing me.

I can run as fast as (lit. to the extent that I am as fast as) my friend.
Idiomatic expressions

한 숨도 못 잔다 fail to get even a wink of sleep; 아파 죽겠다 dying of pain

어제 저녁에 너무 더워서 한 숨도 못 잔어요.
I couldn’t get even a wink of sleep due to the heat last night.

너무 오래 걸어서 다리가 아파 죽겠다.
The pain caused by the long walk is killing me.

Exercises

1 You are in the emergency room of a Korean hospital, and a nurse asks how high your body temperature went up to that night. Tell her that it reached 41°C on occasions.

2 Someone tells you that he has finished Hemingway’s novel For Whom the Bell Tolls. Tell him that you have read that novel also.

3 A colleague says that you look pale. Tell him that you didn’t get a wink of sleep last night.

4 You receive a phone call for Section Chief Hwang, and you think he is wrapped up at work. Tell the caller that you will ask Hwang if he can get to the phone right now.

5 A friend of yours asks you to go climbing on Saturday. Tell him that you have too many things to do.

6 In the examination room of a hospital, a doctor asks you how severe the pains in your stomach are. Tell him that they are almost killing you.

7 Someone comments that your eyes are red and are bugging out a bit. Tell him the reason why you didn’t get a wink of sleep all night.

8 Arrange the words of the dialogue to make sense:
   a 올라간, 적이, 39도까지, 어제 밤에, 열이, 있어요.
   b 빼어, 융금환자를, 있는지, 불게요, 받을 수
   c 감기, 오늘은, 밀려, 환자가, 많이, 있어요

9 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A. Which part of your body hurts the most?
B. I have a headache.
A. How severe is it?
B. It's so severe (that) I couldn't get a wink of sleep.
A. Oh, too bad. Let me examine you first.

10 Complete the dialogue:

A: 어디가 아프세요?
B: 
A: 어떻게 복이 아파요?
B: 
A: 맞아요. 복이 부었습니까.
B: 
A. 감기 증상인 것 같아요.

Culture point
When foreign travelers get sick, they can get medical treatment at such general hospitals as the Severance Hospital or the Asian Medical Center, where doctors and nurses speak some English. An emergency visit may involve a couple of hours' waiting in a crowded waiting room. However, if you can manage some Korean conversation, you can, of course, get medical treatment for a minor illness from a privately owned local hospital. If some medical emergency should occur on the street or open area, you can ask a passerby for assistance, since it is unlikely that you will see a policeman patrolling on the Korean streets. Or, you can call for an ambulance from Asia Emergency Assistance, which provides a 24-hour emergency service for foreigners. For colds and other minor ailments, you can purchase appropriate medicine at Korean drugstores, which are on virtually every street corner. It is legal for a Korean pharmacist to prescribe medicine on the basis of symptoms described by the patient.

Dialogue 2  The doctor examines Mr. Miller and prescribes some medicine for him

의사: Anthony Miller씨죠? 어디가 아프죠?
밀리: 고열이 나면서 두통이 심해요.
의사: 옷을 벗고 저기 진찰대 위에 누우세요.
밀리: (진찰대 위에 누우면서) 이렇게 말입니까?
의사: 예. 배를 이렇게. 눌러도 안 아프지요?
밀리: 안 아파요.
의사: 목은 아프지 않던가요?
밀리: 예. 편도선이 부은 것 같아요.
Vocabulary

고열  high fever  편도선  tonsil
두통  headache  뚱다  swell
심하다  severe  걱정  마세요  don’t worry
옷  clothes  유행성  독감  contagious flu
뱃다  take off  생각  되다  come to think
진찰대  examination table  감기약  cold medicine
눕다  lie down  처방해  주다  give (someone) a prescription
말  word  처방전  prescription
배  belly  네  시간마다  every four hours
누르다  press  봉지
목  neck

Language points

The conjunction -(으)면서

This attaches to the stem of an action verb and expresses two actions in combination. It translates as “while doing . . .”

학생들이 점심을 먹으면서 책을 읽고 있습니다.
While having lunch, students read books.

John은 잡 자면서 코를 골아요.
John snores while sleeping.

The conjunction -아(어/여)도

This conjunction is attached to the stem of any verb and expresses the contrast in value between the first and second clauses. The English equivalent is “even if . . .”

오늘은 비가 와도 바닷가에 갈 거예요.
I’ll go to the beach even if it does rain.
Mary eats Kimchi well even if it is hot and spicy.

내 동생은 공부를 열심히 해도, 성적은 좋지 않아요.

My younger brother doesn’t get good grades even if he studies hard.

**The sentence ending -(-이)던가요?**

This is attached to the stem of any verb and asks an informal question. The suffix 이 is taken after the linking verb (see Lesson 6).

배가 아플 때 열이 나던가요?

Do you experience a hot fever when your stomach aches?

이과장님 지금 사무실에 계시던가요?

Do you know that Section Chief Lee is now in his office?

그분 직업이 회사원이던가요?

Do you know he is a man working for the company?

**The sentence ending -(이)라고 생각되다**

This sentence ending is attached to a noun and indicates what a speaker thinks about the included sentence. The sentence ending -(고) 하다 is used for all other sentences that end in -다, except the sentence that uses the linking verb.

저분은 국민학교 선생님이라고 생각되요.

I think that that person is a teacher at an elementary school.

저 건물을 옥상빌딩이라고 생각되요.

I think that the building over there is the 63 building.

미국 학생들은 한국어 공부를 열심히 한다고 생각되요.

I think that American students study (the) Korean (language) very hard.

**The causal conjunction -(을)테니**

In a two-clause sentence, this ending is attached to the stem of any action verb in the first clause and explains a reason or cause for
the second clause (which can take an imperative, request, or interrogative form).

Since I will come out shortly, please wait here.

Since the train will arrive in ten minutes, let’s wait on the platform.

Exercises

11 You are in the examination room of a hospital and a physician asks you how bad the symptoms of your cold are. Tell him that you have pains in your throat and you also have a severe headache.

12 Noticing that you look tired, a friend asks how you feel. Tell him that, although you didn’t feel too good, you got to work today.

13 A doctor examines part of your stomach and asks you whether it hurts you. Tell him that, even if he presses hard, it doesn’t hurt you too much.

14 A colleague tells you about a recent bout of flu. Ask him if his temperature went up to 40°C.

15 You are not sure whether Section Chief Lee is in his office right now, and you happen to notice that his secretary is nearby. Ask her if he is in his office.

16 You are taking a friend who has come to visit Seoul on a tour. Looking up at the tallest building in the vicinity, she asks you what building it is. Tell her that you think that it’s the 63 building.

17 You are distributing some supplies to the people in your office, and they are swarming around you to get things first. Tell them that, since everybody will get supplies, they should stand in line.

18 Correct your friend’s grammar:

a 배 누르면 아프지 안더니가요?
b 감기약을 처방해 준 터이나, 여기서 기다리세요.
c 요즘을 유행하는 독감이라고 생각됩니다.

19 Translate the following dialogue into Korean:

A: Where does it really hurt you (i.e., hurt badly)?
B: I have a high temperature and my throat really hurts.
A: Can you get up on the examination table and lie down?
B: Do you mean like this?
A: Yeah. That’s it.
B: When I press here, do you feel any pain?
A: I don’t think I feel any pain there.

20 Complete the dialogue:

A. 어디가 아프시죠?
B.
A. 옷을 벗고 이 진찰대 위에 누우세요.
B.
A. 예, 좋습니다. 배를 누르면 어디가 아픈니까?
B.
A. 목은 아픈지 않으시죠?
B.
A. 위가 나쁜 것 같습니다.

21 Reading passage Anthony Miller came down with a high fever yesterday, so he had to stay in bed all day. When he couldn’t stand the pain anymore, he went to a hospital in the neighborhood. After the doctor examined him, he gave him a prescription. Anthony fell into a deep sleep only after taking some medication for his high fever. Try to figure out what kinds of symptoms he showed and how often he was told to take medication every day.

Anthony Miller씨는 어제 저녁부터 몸이 불편하여 침대에 누워 있 었다. 열이 40도까지 올라간 적이 있고, 배도 아파서 잠을 잘 수가 없었다. 더 이상 잠을 수가 없어서 11시경에 근처에 있는 개인병원 의 응급실에 갔다. 응급실에는 감기 환자들이 많이 몰려 있어서 매우 혼잡했다. 한시간 정도 기다린 후에 의사 선생님의 진찰을 받을 수 있었다. 의사 선생님은 진찰을 한 후에 해열제 약을 지어 주면서 4시간마다 먹으라고 했다. Miller씨는 집에 돌아와 약을 먹고 잠 을 잘 수 있었다.

Key words

불편하다 feel uncomfortable 몰리다 crowded
열 fever with people
아프다 ache (verb) 진찰을 받다 be examined
착다 put up with 해열제 medication
개인병원 private hospital for high
응급실 emergency fever
room 지어주다 prescribe
Key to exercises

Introduction: Korean sounds and Hangul

Unit 1 Vowels

Exercise 1
1 우 2 오 3 에 4 아 5 어

Exercise 2
1 에 2 오 3 에 4 아 5 어

Exercise 3 (Individual practice)

Exercise 4 (Individual practice)

Unit 2 Nine consonants

Exercise 5 (Individual practice)

Exercise 6 (Individual practice)

Exercise 7
1 너 2 배 3 다 4 지 5 제주

Exercise 8
1 모조 2 강동 3 비드 4 조미 5 누저
Exercise 9

1 2 3 4 5

Unit 3 Diphthongs

Exercise 10

1 가 2 구 3 저 4 배 5 려
6 마 7 교 8 재 9 료 10 컷

Exercise 11

1 야구 2 교사 3 여유 4 여자 5 여우
6 요리 7 예사 8 조서 9 자유 10 애기

Exercise 12 (Individual practice)

Exercise 13 (Individual practice)

Exercise 14

1 펑 2 취 3 과 4 뭐 5 쉬
6 냄 7 바 8 취 9 뭐 10 웨

Exercise 15

1 겨자 2 종이 3 선박 4 양력 5 벽지
6 술병 7 개석 8 달력 9 날개 10 양복

Exercise 16

1 2 노 3 4 5 o, o

Unit 4 Aspirated consonants

Exercise 17 (Individual practice)
Exercise 18 (Individual practice)

Exercise 19

1 증 2 병 3 적 4 차리 5 타방
6 바리 7 차리 8 별덕 9 현대 10 추기

Exercise 20

1 람 몇 2 첫 채 3 명 팀 4 빛 빛 5 채 거

Exercise 21

1 가 2 야 3 정 4 그 5 예

Exercise 22

1 펜 2 토 3 차 칭

Unit 5 Double consonants

Exercise 23 (Individual practice)

Exercise 24 (Individual practice)

Exercise 25

1 지 2 꾸 3 도 4 동 5 빛
6 더 7 동 8 답 9 갈 10 달

Exercise 26

1 까다 2 과다 3 꼬다 4 달랑 5 끝
6 조석 7 짠다 8 적적 9 무다 10 쓰다

Exercise 27

1 까다 2 크다 3 꼬다 4 말랑 5 끝
6 종 7 짠다 8 치다 9 꼬 10 무다
Exercise 28

1  2  3  4  5

Unit 6 Summary, word structure, and other aspects of Korean

Korean alphabet bingo game

The letters called are: 가, 요, 루, 차, 파, 마, 높, 까, 쥐

Lesson 1

1 a 김선탕님, 안녕하세요?  b 이교수님, 안녕하세요?
   c 박과장님, 안녕하세요?  d 미스 강, 안녕하세요?

2 a 김선생님, 안녕하십니까?  b 사장님, 안녕하십니까?
   c 장선생님, 안녕하십니까?

3 a 잘 지낼습니다.  b 그저 그래요.
   c 요즘을 바쁘게 지낼니다.

4 a 예, 오늘만입니다.  b 미스 리, 안녕하세요?
   c 요즘을 어떻게 지내세요?
   d 김교수님, 안녕하십니까?

5 a 강 기 수  b 박 상 달  c 김 근 영

6 a 미스터 김  b 미스 한
   c 미스 나  d 미스터 신

7 a 김선생님, 요즘을 어떻게 지내세요(어떻세요)?
   b 미스 황, 요즘을 어떻게 지내세요(어떻세요)?
   c 박과장님, 요즘을 어떻게 지내세요(어떻세요)?
   d 미스 리, 요즘을 어떻게 지내세요(어떻세요)?

8 a 교회에 가세요?  b 도서관에 가세요?
   c 식당에 가세요?  d 우체국에 가세요?

9 a 교회에 안 가요?  b 도서관에 안 가요?
   c 집에 안 가요?  d 우체국에 안 가요?
10 a 강선생님은 별로 안 바쁘세요.  
   b 미스터 리는 별로 안 좋아하세요.  
   c 미스 진은 교회에 안 가세요.  
   d 최교수님은 도서관에 별로 안 가세요.

Lesson 2

1 저 your name 입니다. (e.g.: 저 강영수 입니다.)

2 a 이분이 메리 집입니다.   b 이분이 김교수님입니다.  
   c 이분이 메리 스미스입니다.

3 a 우리가   b 내 친구가   c 책상이

4 a 교회에 가봤어요.   b 공부하셨어요.  
   c 도서관에 가봤어요.

5 a D   b I   c R   d R

6 아니요. 모릅니다.

7 이분 알아요.

8 안녕히 계세요.

9 네, 안녕히 가십시오.

10 a 이분이 미스터 김입니다.  b 이분이 박과장님입니다.  
   c 이분이 미스 황입니다.

11 a 우리   b 그 사람   c 저희

12 a 처음 뵐겠습니다.   b 인사하세요.  
   c 이분이 제니 리씨입니다.  d 가 봐야겠습니다.  
   e 다음에 또 뵐겠습니다.

Lesson 3

1 a 점에 계세요.  b 커피 드세요.  
   c 바쁘세요.

2 a 점에 계십시오.  b 커피 드십시오.  
   c 바쁘십시오.
3 a 우유 드시겠어요? b 맥주 드시겠어요? c 인삼차 드시겠어요? d 사이다 드시겠어요?

4 a 이리 왓으세요. / 이리 왓으십시오. b 이리 오세요. / 이리 오십시오. c 들어가세요. / 들어가십시오.

5 a 김선생님이 여기 왓으세요. b 이선생님 주무세요. c 장박사항이 지금 집에 가세요.

6 a 김선생님이 여기 왓으십시오. b 이선생님 주무십시오. c 장박사항이 지금 집에 가십시오.


8 a 눈이 왜서 교회에 안 가요. b 바빠서 교회에 안 가요. c 너무 피곤해서 교회에 안 가요.

9 a 미스 진의 책임이에요. b 케리교수님의 책임이에요. c 박선생님의 책임이에요.

10 a 오늘은 피곤해서 공부 안 해요. b 요즘을 잡사가 잘 돼요. c 오늘은 내 친구를 만나서 기분이 매우 좋아요. d 이선생님은 요즘을 매우 바빠요.

11 a 덕택에 잘 지내세요. b 지금 바빠서, 집에 못 가요. c 이선생님의 책임이에요.

Lesson 4

1 a 롯데호텔에 어떻게 감니까? b 지하철역에 어떻게 감니까? c 종로에 어떻게 감니까?

2 a 여기가 시청입니까? b 여기가 국회의사당입니까? c 여기가 우체국입니까? d 여기가 동대문시장입니까?
3 a 거기가 미국 대사관입니다. b 거기가 신라호텔입니다.
c 거기가 백화점입니다. d 거기가 은행입니다.
e 거기가 경찰서입니다.

4 시청, 역, 우체국

5 a 저쪽으로 어떻게 건너갈까요?
b 오른쪽으로 돌아 지하도로 건너가세요.
c 여기가 대사를 아닙니다.

6 a 거기가 지하철역입니다.
b 여기는 서울이 아닙니다.
c 여기가 시청이 아닙니다.
d 이전생님이 지금 안 바쁘세요.

7 A: 실향합니다. 이 근처에 경찰서가 어디 있습니다가?
    B: 바로 길 건너편에 있습니다.
    A: 이 거리를 어떻게 건너갈까요? 거기는 교통이 혼잡합니다.
    B: 길세요. 모퉁이에 있는 지하도를 이용하세요.
    A: 알겠습니다. 대단히 감사합니다.
    B: 천만에요.

8 Model answer
Mr. Anderson: 실향합니다. 여기가 플라자 호텔입니까?
Student: 아니요. 거기가 플라자 호텔입니다.
Mr. Anderson: 저쪽으로 어떻게 갈까요?
Student: 왼쪽으로 곧장 가세요.
Mr. Anderson: 예, 감사합니다.
Student: 천만에요. 조심하세요 가세요.

9 a 신문 읽어요. b 테니스 해요.
c 영화 바요(보아요). d 정원 손절해요.

10 a 시간이 있으면 이탈리아로 여행을 가겠어요.
b 백만 달러가 있으면 이탈리아로 여행을 가겠어요.
c 비행기가 있으면 이탈리아로 여행을 가겠어요.

11 (Individual answer)

12 a 바로 서울에 갑니다. b 비행기로 서울에 갑니다.
c 기차로 서울에 갑니다.
13 a 버스 정류장에 어떻게 갑니까? b 은행에 어떻게 갑니까?
c 도서관에 어떻게 갑니까?

14 a 서울에 기차로 가면 오래 걸려요.
b 오른쪽으로 가면 극장이 보여요.
c 모퉁이를 지나가면 우체국이 있어요.

15 a 택시로 가세요. b 버스로 가세요.
c 지하철로 가세요. d 리무진으로 가세요.

16 a 고속버스에서 내리면, 바로 정면에 큰 건물이 보일거예요.
b 그 건물 왼쪽으로 지나면, 다른 작은 건물이 보일거예요.
그것이 박물관이에요.
c 매장소에서 표를 사세요.
d 중심로를 따라서 곧장 후문으로 가세요. 거기 제가 있을거예요.

17 Model answer
이 길을 지나 사거리까지 (“up to the intersection”) 가세요.
거기서 왼쪽으로 곧장 가세요.

Lesson 5

1 a 호텔 b 집
   c 도서관 d 집

2 a 서울에 갑니다. b 고향에 갑니다.
   c 뉴욕에 갑니다. d 보스턴에 갑니다.

3 a 기차로 갑니다. b 고속버스로 갑니다.
   c 차로 갑니다. d 택시로 갑니다.

4 a 여기가 시청입니다. (지도를 보면서)
b 여기가 지하철역입니다. (지도를 보면서)
c 여기가 미국 대사관입니다. (지도를 보면서)

5 A: 김선생님 어디 가세요?
B: 지하철역에 갑니다.
A: 누가 옮니까?
B: 네, 내 동생이 외요. 내일이 내 아들 생일이에요.
6 a 누가 서울역에 오니까?  b 서울역이 지기에 있습니까?
c 뉴욕에 기차로 가요.  d 주말에 친구 집에 가요.
e 친구가 집에 가요.

7 Model answer
   YOU: 어디 가세요?
   COLLEAGUE: 영국 대사관에 강니다.
   YOU: 대사관이 어디 있습니까?
   COLLEAGUE: 저기가 바로 대사관입니다.
   YOU: 그럼, 다녀 오세요.
   COLLEAGUE: 예, 안녕히 가세요.

8 a 교회 가요.  b 집 가요.
c 역 가요.  d 도서관 가요.

9 a 아침에 도서관에 가요.  b 오후에 도서관에 가요.
c 정오에 도서관에 가요.  d 저녁에 도서관에 가요.

10 a 형님께서 오세요.  b 아버님께서 오세요.
c 어머님께서 오세요.  d 삼촌께서 오세요.

11 a 눈이 많이 왔겨든요.  b 눈(...) 잡겨든요.
c 친구가 왔겨든요.  d 집에 갔겨든요.

12 a 뉴욕에서 왔어요.  b 요하네스버그에서 왔어요.
c 시드니에서 왔어요.  d 고항에서 왔어요.

13 a 내일 형님이 한국에서 오세요.
     b 제 생일이 월말이겨든요.
c 지금 어머님께서 지하철역 가세요.
     d 지금 비가 많이 오겨든요.

14 a 주말에 친구 집에 가요  b 아버지께서 교회에 가세요.
c 친구가 식당에서 점심 먹어요.  d 편지가 서울에서 왔어요.

15 line 1. — 주무세요     line 2. — 자요?
   line 3. — 주무세요     line 4. — 잡니다
   line 5. — 주무싶니까?

16 아버지께서 고향에서 오십니다.
Lesson 6

1 a 그것은 의사입니다. b 그것은 신문입니다. c 그것은 사전입니다. d 그것은 지도입니다.

2 a 아니오, 그것은 의사입니다. b 아니오, 그것은 오늘 신문이 아닙니다. c 예, 그것은 메모지입니다. d 예, 그것은 연필입니다.

3 a 아니오, 저분은 간호사입니다. b 아니오, 이분은 누나가 아닙니다. c 아니오, 이분은 남자가 아닙니다.

4 a 그것은 연필이에요. b 그것은 펜이에요. c 그것은 책이에요. d 그것은 지도이에요.

5 a 자는 있어요. b 한국지도는 있어요. c 클립은 있어요. d 공책은 있어요.

6 a 아니오, (연필) 없어요. b 예, (시계) 있어요. c 예, (열쇠) 있어요.

7 a 미스 리는 식당에 있습니다. b 톡선 과장님이 휴게실에 계십니다. c 비서 미스 홍은 간이식당에 있습니다.

8 a 스카치 테이프는 없는데요. b 스테플러는 없는데요. c 가위는 없는데요.

9 a 불펜 좀 갖다 주겠어요? b 메모지 좀 갖다 주겠어요? c 클립 좀 갖다 주겠어요? d 잉크 좀 갖다 주겠어요?

10 (Individual answers)

Lesson 7

1 a 신문 봤습니다(봤어요). b 영화관에 갔습니다(갔어요). c 한국어 공부했습니다(했어요).

2 a 점심 밖에서 하실까요(하시겠어요)? b 차 한잔 하실까요(하시겠어요)? c 슈퍼마켓에 가실까요(가시겠어요)?
3 a 점심 밖에서 합시다.  b 차 한잔 합시다.  
c 슈퍼마켓에 갑시다.

4 a 데이터 했어요?  b 텔레비전 봤어요?  
c 여행했어요?

5 a 구내 식당이 어떻게습니까?  b 신라식당이 어떻게습니까?  
c 다미정이 어떻게습니까?

6 신라식당은 깨끗하고 값이 싸요.

7 a 구내 식당이 어떻게습니까?  
b 간이 식당이 어떻게습니까?  
c Korea House (한국의 집) 식당이 어떻게습니까?

8 A: 점심(식사) 하셨어요?  
   B: 아니오, 아직 안했습니다.  
   A: 점심 식사하러 갈이 나가실까요?  
   B: 네, 그러십시오.  
   A: 구내 식당이 어떻게습니까?  
   B: 네, 그곳은 크고 값이 매우 싸요.

9 여기 비빔밥 하나 주세요.

10 저도 불고기 백반을 시키지요.

11 a 비빔 냉면 주세요.  b 냉면 둘 주세요.  
c 세 명입니다.

12 비빔밥 하나, 갈비탕 하나 주세요.

13 이번에는 제가 내겠습니다.

14 Model answer:  
   a 아니요, 아직 하지 않았어요.  
   b 집에서 하겠습니다.  
   c 냉면을 시켜겠어요.

15 A: 어서 오세요. 몇 분이세요?  
   B: 두 명입니다.  
   A: 될 주문하시겠어요?
B: 볼고기 백반 하나, 만두국 하나 주세요.
A: 조금만 기다리세요.

16 a 청회씨는 오늘 회사에 출근하지 않았다.
b 볼고기 둘 주세요.
c 식사 많이 드세요.
d Goldsmith씨도 김밥을 시켰어요.

17 영자씨, 저녁식사 같이 하시겠어요?

18 a 볼고기 백반 주세요.  b 볼고기 정식 주세요.
c 만두국 주세요.

d Goldsmith씨는 비빔냉면이 너무 매워서 다 먹지 못했다.

Lesson 8

1 a 보다 (action verb)  b 이다 (linking verb)
c 있다 (existential verb)  d 많다 (adjectival verb)

2 그 영화는 좋았는데, 너무 길었어요.

3 음식은 좋았지만, 값이 너무 비쌌어요.

4 a 책 읽었어요.  b 텔레비전 영화 봤어요.
c 아무 것도 안했어요.

5 a 열심히 공부했지만 잘 이해가 되지 않았어요.
b 많이 먹지만 살이 지지 않아요.
c 이 상품은 값이 싸지만 품질이 좋아요.

6 a 좋은  b 큰  c 비싼

7 Model answer:
a 영화관에 가요.
b 아니요.
c 예, 미스김하고 있어요.

8 a 미스 장 내일 저녁에 시간 있어요?
b 미스 장 오늘 밤에 시간 있어요?
c 미스 장 점심 때에 시간 있어요?

9 오늘은 안 되겠어요.
10 a 11시 25분입니다. b 5시 반입니다. c 11시 10분 전입니다.

11 a 시험이 끝난 후에 국장에 갑니다. b 일이 끝난 후에 국장에 갑니다.

12 a 명동에 있는 식당에서 만나요. b 종로에 있는 식당에서 만나요. c 광화문에 있는 식당에서 만나요.

13 a 오후 세 시에 전화하세요. b 네 시 십오 분에 전화하세요. c 오전 아홉 시 십 분에 전화하세요.

14 a 아침 열 시에 제 남동생하고 약속이 있어요. b 정오에 제 어머니하고 점심 약속이 있어요. c 저녁에 이웃집 친구들과 약속이 있어요.

15 (Individual answers)


17 많은 선수들이 다쳐서 두 사람은 기분이 별로 안 좋았다.

Lesson 9

1 a 용산 지하철역까지 갑니다. b 미국 대사관까지 갑니다. c 김포 공항까지 갑니다.

2 동대문까지 얼마나 걸립니까?

3 a 종각까지 10분 걸립니다. b 동대문 운동장까지 30분 걸립니다. c 미국 대사관까지 50분 정도 걸립니다.

4 a 기차로 다섯 시간 걸립니다. b 비행기로 한시간 걸립니다. c 고속버스로 네시간 반 걸립니다.
5 a 이것은 펜이고 저것은 연필입니다.
   b 이것은 컴퓨터이고 저것은 칠판입니다.
   c 이것은 책상이고 저것은 의자입니다.

6 a 왼쪽에 있는 건물은 무슨 건물이에요?
   b 오른쪽에 있는 건물은 무슨 건물이에요?
   c 저기 큰 건물은 무슨 건물이에요?

7 A: 어디까지 가십니까?
   B: 광화문에 있는 미국 대사관까지 갑니다.
   A: 어떤 길로 갈까요?
   B: 시청까지 가서 거기서 우회전 하세요.
   A: 알겠습니다.

8 a 제 과점 앞에서 내려 줄 수 있어요?
   b 은행 앞에서 내려 줄 수 있어요?
   c 교회 앞에서 내려 줄 수 있어요?

9 요금이 얼마입니까?

10 a 도서관에 가서 신문을 읽겠습니다.
    b 술집에 가서 사람을 만나겠습니다.

11 a 장보러 갈 수 있어요.
    b 은행에 갈 수 있어요.
    c 방을 청소할 수 있어요.

12 만 사천원밖에 없어요.

13 a 책값이 얼마입니까?
    b 공책값이 얼마입니까?
    c 메모지값이 얼마입니까?

14 a 모자는 사천원에 샀습니다.
    b 옷은 사면 오천원에 샀습니다.

15 Model answer:
   a 교보빌딩 앞에서 내려 주세요.
   b 시청까지 갑니다.
   c 아니요, 저기 신호등 지나서 내려 주세요.

16 택시로 가시죠?
17 A: 여기서 내려 드릴까요?
   B: 아니오, 앞으로 좀 더 가시겠어요?
   A: 저기에는 설 수 없어요.
   B: 그럼 저 네거리 지나서 내려줄 수 있어요?
   A: 그렇게 하지요.
   B: 택시 요금이 얼마인니까?
   A: 육천 천백원입니다.

18 운전기사 아저씨가 길을 잘 몰 듯 들어 시간이 더 많이 걸렸다. 그래서 택시비도 두배 지불해야했다.

Lesson 10

1 a 수건 사자 않겠어요.  b 청바지 사자 않겠어요.
   c 반바지 사자 않겠어요.

2 a 사과가 배만큼 큽니다.  b 연필이 펜만큼 큽니다.

3 a ②번이 더 길어요.  b ②번이 더 커요.
   c ②번이 더 돈이 많아요.

4 a ③번이 가장 뚱뚱해요.  b ①번이 가장 길어요.
   c ②번이 가장 길어요.

5 a 넥타이가 비싼 것 같아요.  b 신발이 비싼 것 같아요.
   c 티셔츠가 비싼 것 같아요.

6 미도파 백화점이 편찮아요.

7 A: 오늘 오후에 쇼핑 같이 가겠어요?
   B: 오늘 오후에는 좀 바쁘네요.
   A: 그럼, 내일은 어때요?
   B: 내일은 시간이 있어요.
   A: 내일 일이 끝난 후에 연락해요.

8 a 노란 가방은 얼마예요?  b 빨간 가방은 얼마예요?
   c 파란 가방은 얼마예요?

9 a 파란 티셔츠 좀 볼 수 있어요?
   b 빨간 티셔츠 좀 볼 수 있어요?
   c 노란 티셔츠 좀 볼 수 있어요?
10 좀 곱을 수 없어요?

11 이 가방은 좋으나 사지 않겠어요.

12 a 이 지갑은 값이 비싼데요.
   b 이 양말은 값이 비싼데요.
   c 이 빨간 모자는 값이 비싼데요.

13 파란 가방만 주세요.

14 이 모자는 현금으로 지불할게요.

15 a John은 요즈음 도서관에서 공부 안 한다.
   b 저기 있는 반바지 주세요.
   c 빨간 바지 사겠어요.
   d 저 푸른 가방은 어디요?

16 A: 책가방 좀 볼 수 있어요?
   B: 보세요. 어떤 색을 좋아하세요?
   A: 하얀 색으로 주세요.
   B: 이것들은 하얀 가방이에요. 예쁘고 튼튼해 보여요.
   A: 이 밥색 가방은 얼마나요?
   B: 학생은 돈이 없으니가 많이 갈아서 사만 오천원이에요.
   A: 대단히 감사합니다.

17 Model answer:
   a 쏟대 백화점에 갑니다.
   b 하얀색 양말을 신고 있어요.
   c 푸른색입니다.

18 민수는 물건값이 비싸서 빨간 색계를 살 수 없었다.

Lesson 11

1 a 서울시내 구경을 갈가하십시오.
   b 비행기로 제주도에 갈가하십시오.
   c 수영하러 갈가하십시오.

2 삼십 오천이나 오십 육천 버스가 이태원에 갑니다.
3 a 이나  b 이나  c 나

4 a 이십 삼번하고 사십 오번이 시청에 갑니다.
 b 사십 육번하고 육십 셨번이 미국 대사관에 갑니다.

5 a 오전 열 시 삼십 분에 새마을호가 부산에 갑니다.
 b 오후 세 시 삼십 오 분에 무궁화호가 부산에 갑니다.

6 미도파 백화점에 갑다 왔어요.

7 A: 이번 주말에 빌 하세요?
 B: 글쎄요. 비행기로 제주도에 갈까 합니다.
 A: 거기에서 누구 만나세요?
 B: 예, 제 삼촌이 거기 살아요.
 A: 아 그래요. 그럼 잘 다녀오세요.
 B: 그렇게요.

8 B: 미도파 백화점에 갔다 옵니다.
 B: 예쁜 티셔츠를 샀어요.
 B: 값이 샀어요.
 B: 그렇게 하세요.

9 a 부산행 표 한 장 주세요.  b 경주행 표 두 장 주세요.
 c 광주행 표 세 장 주세요.

10 설악산 가는 기차표를 어디서 팔아요?

11 부산행 표 한 장 주세요.

12 지금 옥 번 휴에 들어 오고 있는 열차는 부산행입니까?

13 a 오늘 신문 읽고 있어요.  b 친구들과 얘기하고 있어요.
 c 아무것도 안 하고 있어요.

14 지금 칠 번 휴에 있는 열차를 타세요.

15 a 지금 들어온 기차가 부산에 갑니다.
 b 도서관에서 잡지를 읽는 학생들은 공부를 잘한다.
 c 기차를 타는 손님들은 미국 사람들은.
16 a 미국에 가는 비행기는 10시에 있어요.
    b 부산가는 고속버스 몇 시에 있어요?
    c 수원행 지하철 세 시에 있어요.

17 B: 부산까지 갑니다.
    B: 서울역에서 타어요.
    B: 오후 4시에 도착합니다.

18 A: 이번 주말에 무엇하셔요?
    B: 아마 뉴욕시에 갑 거예요.
    A: 뉴욕시에 어떻게 가세요?
    B: 차로 갑 거예요.
    A: 갔다가 언제 오세요?
    B: 일요일 저녁에 늦게 돌아올까 해요.

19 서울역에서 광주까지 네 시간이 걸렸다. 광주역에서
    7번 버스를 타고 송정리에 있는 향남집으로갔다.

Lesson 12

1 a 양말을 여동생에게 주려고 샀습니다.
    b 블펜을 삼촌께 드리려고 샀습니다.
    c 티셔츠를 할머니께 드리려고 샀습니다.

2 사전하고 펜을 샀습니다.

3 아프니까 휴식에 참석 못했어요.

4 책이 재미 없으니까 보지 않았어요.

5 영화가 재미 없으니까 도중에 나왔어요.

6 아기가 방에서 자고 있으니까 조용히 하세요.

7 (Individual answers)

8 a 오월 육일입니다.    b 오월 십오일입니다.
    c 목요일입니다.

9 예금 구좌를 개설하려고 왔어요.
10 A: 어떻게 오셨어요?
    B: 예금 구좌를 개설하려고 왔어요.
    A: 저기 표를 기입하세요.
    B: 알겠습니다.

11 B: 보통예금으로 하겠어요.
    A: 그럼, 이 표에 서명하세요.
    A: 저기서 잠깐 기다리세요.

12 a 김선생님은 현금을 찾아서 은행에 갔어요.
    b 이파장님은 쉬려 휴게실에 갔어요.
    c 흑비서는 봉급을 찾아서 입금 창구에 갔어요.

13 지갑을 찾으려면 계산대로 가세요.

14 예금 칭구서에다가 비밀번호를 적고 서명하세요.

15 반원 자리 다섯 장하고, 오천원 자리 세 장으로 주세요.

16 a 도장이 필요하세요.  b 여권이 필요하세요.
    c 비밀번호가 필요하세요.

17 a 예금을 찾으려면 도장이 필요하세요.
    b 이름칸에 비밀번호도 쓰시고 도장을 찍으세요.
    c 반원자리 다섯장 필요하세요.

18 A: 어떻게 오셨어요?
    B: 예금하러 왔는데요.
    A: 저기 있는 표를 기입하세요.
    B: 알겠습니다.

19 B: 예금을 찾으러 왔어요.
    B: 오반원 찾아했습니다.
    B: 여기 다 썼습니다.
    B: 예, 알겠습니다.

20 예금을 찾으려면 여권이 필요해 호텔방에 가서 여권을 가져왔지만 은행이 망해서 현금을 찾을 수 없었다.

Lesson 13

1 늦어서 미안합니다.

2 교통이 망하자 빨리 올 수 없어요.
3 방금 전(or 얼마전)에 김선생은 사무실에 있었어요.

4 비가 오기 전에 안으로 들어 갑니다.

5 a 지금 비가 오니까 안으로 들어 갑니다.
   b 바람이 부니까 건물 안으로 들어 가세요.
   c 학생들이 교실에 많이 있다.
   d 이사장님은 많은 돈이 있다.

6 a 언제나 서울역 앞은 교통이 밀려서 혼잡하다.
   b 시내에서 학생들이 테모해서 교통이 복잡하다.
   c 서울에서 많은 한국음식을 먹었다.

7 A: 늦어서 미안해요.
   B: 편찮아요.
   A: 버스를 타는데 교통이 막혀서 빨리 올 수 없었어요.
   B: 안됐어요. 대학생들이 테모했어요?
   A: 아니오. 교통사고가 시청 앞에서 났어요.

8 B: 시청에 갔었어요.
   B: 예, 교통이 많이 막혔어요.
   B: 아니오. 학생들이 테모를 했었어요.

9 커피 한 잔 갖다 주세요.

10 책을 다 읽은 후에 갖다 드리지요.

11 잘 지내세요.

12 읽을 책이 많아요.

13 a 동생한테(에게) 연필 줬어요.
   b 삼촌한테(에게) 자 드렸어요.
   c 언니한테(에게) 공책 줬어요.

14 a 일주일에 세시간씩 영화를 가르쳐요.
   b 일주일에 두시간씩 제미를 가르쳐요.

15 그 일을 아주 힘들겠군요!

16 a 쉬여야해요. b 책을 읽어야해요.
   c 제 동생하고 영화 보러 가야해요.
17 A: 요즈음 어떻게 지내세요?
B: 바쁘게 지냅니다.
A: 무슨 일이 그렇게 많아요?
B: 요즈음 회의가 많이 있거든요.

18 B: 예 좀 바빴어요.
B: 개인지도를 하고 있어요.
B: 일주일에 6시간씩 가르치고 있어요.

19 주말여행에 관하여 이야기했고 버스를 타고 집으로 돌아오던 길에 교통이 막혀서 택시를 타고 집으로 돌아왔습니다.

Lesson 14

1 방을 예약하지 못 했어요.

2 책을 다 못 읽었어요.

3 아직 쉬지 못했어요.

4 너무 바빠서 그 영화를 보지 못했어요.

5 주머니에 삼만원밖에 없어요.

6 저 스웨터 입어 볼 수 있어요?

7 아직 못 가봤어요.

8 은둘방에서 못 자는데요.

9 길 건너 다른 곳으로 가 보십니다.

10 A: 침대방 두 개 있어요?
B: 여기는 침대방이 없으니까, 다른 여관으로 가보세요.
A: 그럼 은둘방은 있어요?
B: 예, 은둘방은 세 개 있습니다.

11 A: 몇 분이세요?
B: 세 사람입니다.
A: 은둘방 쓰시겠어요?
B: 아닙니다. 저희들은 외국인이니까 집대방을 쓴것이어야.
A: 집대방은 없는데요.
B: 아니, 그래요. 옆에 있는 호텔로 가겠어요.

12 언제 회의가 있을지 물라요.

13 a 새 옷을 사고 싶어요.
   b 제 여자친구 생일선물을 사고 싶어요.
   c 책을 사고 싶어요.

14 제 방은 몇 호실입니까?

15 그의 방은 몇 호실입니까?

16 5인용 집대방 있어요?

17 집대방 두 개하고 온돌방 하나가 필요해요.

18 A: 이 호텔에 집대방 있어요?
   B: 아니요. 이 호텔에는 온돌방만 있어요.
   A: 온돌방 하나에 얼마나요?
   B: 3만원인데요.

19 B: 예, 있어요.
   B: 방 하나에 4만원인데요.
   B: 예, 있어요.
   B: 그렇게 하지요.

20 여권을 가지고 가지 않아서 동료직원 헬리에게 전화를 했다. 그가 여권 번호를 알려 주어서 투숙할 수 있었다.

Lesson 15

1 a Jane Kim이 나오기를 기다려요.
   b Thomas Moon이 나오기를 기다려요.
   c 이선생님이 나오기를 기다려요.

2 a 한국소설을 읽기 시작했어요.
   b 한국어를 공부하기 시작했어요.
   c 여자친구와 데이트하기 시작했어요.

3 4월에도 눈이 오는 때가 있어요.
4 123번 버스가 저기에 오네요!
5 직원들이 많이 불참했습니다.
6 a 그는 여름이 오기를 기다린다.
   b 갑자기 비가 오기 시작했다.
   c Jane은 때로는 습도 많이 마시는 때가 있다.
7 A: 여름에도 눈이 오는 지역이 있다.
    B: 사람들이 가을이 오기를 기다려요.
    C: 한국의 기후는 사계절이 분명하다.
8 A: 한국의 여름 날씨는 어떠세요?
    B: 대체로 더워요.
    A: 비가 많이 왔어요?
    B: 예, 여름은 장마철이라서 비가 많이 옵니다.
9 B: 대체로 시원해야요.
    B: 산에 동산 가요.
    B: 아니오, 없어요.
10 a 책을 사서 가요.
    b 친구 만나러 가요.
    c 친구들과 놀러 가요.
11 a 미국에 돌아간 것 같아요.
    b 그의 여자 친구와 해이진 것 같아요.
    c 사업장 여행한 것 같아요.
    d 아픈 것 같아요.
12 미국에서 온 어떤 학생이 공부하고 있는 것 같아요.
13 전보다 훨씬 젊어졌어요.
14 여름이 되면 날이 길어져요.
15 A: 한국의 가을 날씨는 어떠세요?
    B: 대체로 따뜻야.
    A: 가을에 눈이 오는 때도 있어요?
    B: 아니오, 12월부터 눈이 오기 시작해야요.
    A: 사람들은 가을에 무엇해요?
    B: 동산하러 산에 가요.
16 A: 오늘은 날씨가 아주 좋군요.
   A: 내일 뭐 하겠어요?
   A: 그럼, 혼자 갈거예요.

17 봄에는 산과 들에 꽃이 만발해서 아름답워요.
   여름에는 덥고 비가 많이 와서 볼로 좋지 않아요.
   가을은 시원하고 겨울은 아주 춥고 눈도 많이 내려요.

Lesson 16

1 2년 전부터 한국어를 배우기 시작했어요.

2 10년 전부터 수영을 배웠어요.

3 a 동우가 미국으로 돌아갔다고 해요.
    b 동우가 아팠다고 해요.
    c 동우가 사라졌다고 해요.

4 회사가 가까워서 결어 다녀요.

5 a 그는 사과를 좋아한다.
    b 그 사람은 사과를 좋아한다.
    c John은 한국을 좋아해서 한국여자와 결혼했다.
    d 그 여학생은 내가 좋아하는 학생이예요.

6 a 회사가까운 아파트에서 살어요.
    b 외국인 숙소에서 살어요.
    c 친척집에서 살어요.

7 불고기를 가장 좋아해요.

8 A: 지금 어디에서 사세요?
   B: 호압 숙소에서 살어요.
   A: 그 숙소는 회사에서 가까워요?
   B: 아니요, 아주 멀어요. 그래서, 매일 아침 버스 타고 다녀요

9 B: 외국인 숙소에서 살어요.
   B: 한달에 80만원이에요.
   B: 대체로 편찮아요.
   B: 갈비를 가장 좋아해요.
10 남동생활에서 편지가 왔어요.

11 집에서 편지가 왔어요.

12 a belt는 한국어로 뭐라고 해요?
   b purse는 한국어로 뭐라고 해요?
   c pocket-size notebook은 한국어로 뭐라고 해요?

13 Model answer:
   a 아니요, 교회에 가지 않았어요.
   b 예, 안 갔어요.
   c 예, 보겠어요.
   d 아니요, 안 먹어 봤어요.

14 전화를 전 사람이 누구지요?

15 그 음식 참 맛있었어요.

16 공책에다가 받아 쓰세요.

17 전화 잘못 걸어서 미안합니다.

18 전화 잘못 거쳤습니다.

19 A: 저한테 전화오는 것 없었어요?
   B: 예, KBS의 어떤 사람이 한테서 전화왔어요.
   A: 그의 전화번호 있어요?
   B: 여기 있어요.
   A: 그에게 즉시 전화를 해 봐야겠어요.
   B: 벌써 7시에요. 그는 아마 저녁을 먹을거예요.
   A: 그렇군요. 내일 아침 전화하겠어요.

20 B: 아니오, 안 계십니다.
    B: 아니오, 전화 잘못 거쳤습니다.

21 택시 운전사는 Kerry씨의 영어 발음을 잘못 알아 듣고 Inter-continental Hotel에 내려주었다. 거기에 있는 경비원 아저씨의 도움으로 택시를 타고 외국인 속소로 갈 수 있었다.

Lesson 17

1 a 더 부유해지면 좋겠어요.  b 승진하면 좋겠어요.
   c 세계일주 여행을 하면 좋겠어요.
2 a 택시 잡기가 쉽지 않아요.
   b 잡을 잘 자기가 쉽지 않아요.
   c 미국음식을 찾기가 쉽지 않아요.

3 예, 파티에 가겠습니다. 감사합니다.

4 약도가 있으면 좋겠어요.

5 찾아갈 수 있을 것 같아요.

6 a 저기에 빨간 건물이 보여요.
   b 저기 있는 큰 건물을 봐요.
   c 큰 건물이 보이는 쪽에서 우리집은 왼쪽에 있습니다.

7 A: 이번 주말에 뭐 하세요?
   B: 한가해요.
   A: 저의 집에 오실 수 있어요?
   B: 그날이 무슨 날이에요?
   A: 아뇨, 시간을 함께 보내고 싶어요.

8 B: 굽세요.
   B: 오늘 저녁은 안되겠는데요, 선약이 있어요.
   B: 괜찮습니다.
   B: 예, 그렇게 합시다.

9 별거 아닙니다.

10 조금 늦어도 됩니다.

11 차린 음식들이 너무 많아서 보입니다.

12 내일 만날때 책을 돌려주겠어요.

13 한국음식을 잘 먹는 편이에요.

14 A: 사장님은 출근했지만 회의에 참석하지 않았다.
   B: 차린 음식이 많아서 보인다.
   A: 김치가 맵지만 저는 잘 먹는 편이에요.
   B: 매운 김치를 먹을 때는 물을 많이 마셔요.

15 A. 어떤 한국음식을 가장 좋아합니까?
   B: 그렇게 맵지 않은 것이 좋아요.
A: 잡채 좋아해요?
B: 물론, 좋아해요.
A: 김치 어때요?
B: 김치는 너무 맛있어서 그렇게 좋아하지 않아요.

16 B: 초대 받아서 김과장님 댁에 갔어요.
B: 김과장님 생신이었어요.
B: 예, 많이 먹었어요.
B: 잡채가 가장 맛있었어요.

17 약속시간을 6시로 알고 너무 빨리 김과장님 댁에 도착했더나. 손님이 될 때까지 비디오 영화를 보면서 기다렸고 7시에 재미있는 파티가 시작되었다.

Lesson 18

1 새 아파트로 이사했다면서요?

2 저 건물은 46층이라면서요?

3 새 차와 새 아파트를 사셨다면서요?

4 장신생님은 회의가 끝나자마자 나가셨어요.

5 시청에서 비서로 일하곤 했어요.

6 주말에 친구들과 등산을 가곤 해요.

7 새로 이사했으니까, 한 택 내겠어요.

8 저희 동네도 마찬가지예요.

9 a Jane은 다음 달에 일본에 갈 모양이에요.
   b 내 동생은 집에 오자마자 화장실에 들이갔다.
   c 여름에 날씨가 더우면, 사람들은 옷을 벗곤 한다.

10 A: 비싼 아파트로 이사 했다면서요? 그것이 사실이에요?
   B: 예, 새 아파트로 이사한지 석달 됐어요.
   A: 아파트가 얼마나 쓸까?
   B: 25평짜리. 새 식구 살기에 좋어요.
   A: 아파트 단지의 사람들이 만나봤어요?
   B: 아니, 하지만, 집들이에 사람들을 초대할 거예요.
A: 집들이 할 때 저도 초대해줘요.
B: 물론이죠!

11 B: 지난 달 말에 갔어요.
   B: 아직 만나지 못했어요.
   B: 시간 나면 초대할까 해요.
   B: 물론이죠.

12 이번 주말에 야유회 갈 시간 없어요.

13 선약이 있어서 쇼핑갈 시간이 없어요.

14 새 차를 살 계획이에요.

15 가구는 아직 새 것처럼 보여요.

16 이번에 그 회의에 참석할 필요가 없어요.

17 새 아파트로 이사한 지 일년 되었어요.

18 백화점 쇼핑도 할 겪, 영화도 볼 겪해서 명동에 갔시다.

19 A: 강남의 새 집으로 이사한지 얼마나 됐어요?
   B: 적당쯤 됐어요.
   A: 집이 모두 정돈했어요?
   B: 아니요, 아직 영망이에요.
   A: 다 정리되면 보여 주세요.
   B: 물론, 그러죠.

20 B: 아니요, 아직 집이 영망이에요.
   B: 2주 정도 커리거예요.
   B: 예, 다음 달에 할까 해요.

21 William Ryan 씨는 40평짜리 아파트를 샀는데, 아직 집 정돈이 되지 않아서 회사 직원들을 초대하지 못했다.

**Lesson 19**

1 지난 주 휴가로서 일하러 가지 않았어요.

2 다음 여름이라서 많은 사람들이 해변에 왔어요.
3 너무 늦게 일어나서 휴식에 늦을 뻔 했어요.
4 기름이 다 떨어져서 큰일 난 뻔 했어요.
5 4리터 넣어 주세요.
6 아파서 가지 못했어요.
7 이것은 새 옷이거든요.
8 A: 기름 넣어 드릴까요?
    B: 예. 2리터 넣어 주세요.
    A: 그럼요. 창을 닫아 드릴까요?
    B: 하지 않아도 돼요. 오늘 아침에 청소했거든요.
    A: 알겠습니다.
9 B: 이 근처에 있는 주유소 아세요?
    B: 누구한테 물어 불까요?
    B: 경찰 아저씨, 이 근처에 있는 주유소 아세요?
    A and B: 아, 미안합니다.
10 이 세 가지 일을 오늘 오후에 끝내 버립시다.
11 오후 4시에 친구하고 종로에서 만나기로 했어요.
12 기차로 가기로 했어요.
13 저는 서울을 좋아하기는 합니다.
14 그 남자는 일을 잘하기는 합니단만.
15 공원 잔디밭에 들여 가면 안 돼요.
16 그렇게 오래 텔레비전을 보서는 안 돼요.
17 휴식하는 동안에 세 사람이 전화했어요.
18 제 차가 고장이 난 것 같는데 한번 봐 주시겠어요?
19 아까 달리는데 이상한 소리가 나기는 했어요.
20 A: 어떻게 오셨어요?
    B: 제 차가 고장난 것 같아요.
21 B: 어디가 고장 났습니까?
B: 라디에타에서 물이 다 빠져 버렸군요.
B: 4시간 걸립니다.

22 센드라씨가 차를 운전할 때 라디에타의 물이 다 새어 버렸기 때문에 이상한 소리가 나서 차를 고치고 집으로 그냥 돌아왔다.

Lesson 20

1 열이 41도까지 올라간 적도 있어요.

2 전에 그 소셜을 잡은 적이 있어요.

3 밤새도록 한 숨도 못 죽어요.

4 그가 전화 받을 수 있는지 물어 보겠어요.

5 할 일이 많이 있어요.

6 졸을 정도로 속이 아파요.

7 눈이 아파서 한 숨도 못 잔어요.

8 a 어제밤에 열이 39도까지 올라간 적이 있어요.
   b 응급환자를 받을 수 있는지 물어 볼계요.
   c 오늘은 갑기 환자가 많이 밀려 있어요.

9 A: 어디가 가장 아프세요?
   B: 머리가 아파요.
   A: 얼마나 아프죠?
   B: 너무 아파서 한 숨도 못 잔어요.
   A: 오, 안됐군요. 우선 진찰하도록 합니다.

10 B: 목이 많이 아파요.
   B: 목이 부은 것 같아요.
   B: 무슨 중상인 것 같아요?
11 목이 아프면서 두통이 심해요.

12 몸이 아파도 오늘 일했어요.

13 세계 놀라도 그렇게 아프지 않아요.

14 체온이 40도까지 올라갔다고요?

15 이파장님이 지금 사무실에 계시던가요?

16 저 건물은 63 빌딩이라고 생각되죠.

17 모두에게 물품을 드릴테니 줄 서세요.

18 a 배를 누르면, 아프지 않던가요?
   b 감기약을 처방해 줄 틀이나, 여기서 기다리세요.
   c 요즘 유행하는 독감이라고 생각됩니다.

19 A: 어디가 가장 많이 아프죠?
   B: 고열이 나면서 목이 아파요.
   A: 전찰대 위에 누우시겠어요?
   B: 이렇게 말입니까?
   A: 예. 좋습니다.
   B: 이곳을 누르면 아파요?
   A: 거기는 안 아파요.

20 B: 배가 많이 아파요.
   B: 이렇게 말씀니까? (돌아 누우면서)
   B: 배 위쪽이 아ปวด다.
   B: 목은 아프지 않습니다.

21 열이 40도까지 오르고 배가 아파서 잠을 잘 수가 없었으나,
   의사가 진찰 후 4시간마다 감기약을 먹으라고 말했다.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가구</td>
<td>furniture</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가구점</td>
<td>furniture store</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가끔</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>68, 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가능하면</td>
<td>if possible</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치다</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>154, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가만 있자</td>
<td>let me see</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가보다</td>
<td>try to go</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가볍다</td>
<td>light</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가세요, 갑니다</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가스</td>
<td>gas</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가을</td>
<td>autumn</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가위</td>
<td>scissors</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가져다주다</td>
<td>fetch</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가져오다</td>
<td>bring</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간호사</td>
<td>nurse</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>같이</td>
<td>together</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감기</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감기약</td>
<td>cold medicine</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감사하다</td>
<td>thank</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>감사합니다</td>
<td>thank you</td>
<td>51, 91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값</td>
<td>price</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값이 싸다</td>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>87, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값을 깎다</td>
<td>cut the price</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>강남</td>
<td>Kangnam “south of Han river”</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개설하다</td>
<td>open an account</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개인병원</td>
<td>private hospital</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개인치도</td>
<td>tutoring</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거리</td>
<td>street</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거의</td>
<td>almost</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거친 운동</td>
<td>violent sports</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걱정</td>
<td>don’t worry</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걱정이 되다</td>
<td>be worried</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건너다</td>
<td>cross</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건물</td>
<td>building</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸리다</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>57, 108, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어야합니다</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어서</td>
<td>by foot</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>겁이 날다</td>
<td>be scared</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경기</td>
<td>game, match</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경비원</td>
<td>guard</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경찰</td>
<td>police</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결혼하다</td>
<td>marry</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계산대</td>
<td>cashier's desk</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계산서</td>
<td>guest check</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계십시오</td>
<td>bye-bye</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계획</td>
<td>plan</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고려대학교</td>
<td>Korea University</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고맙다</td>
<td>be thankful</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고열</td>
<td>high fever</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고장나다</td>
<td>broken down</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고치다</td>
<td>fix</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고향</td>
<td>hometown</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곤장</td>
<td>right way</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골목</td>
<td>alley</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>study</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공원</td>
<td>park</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공책</td>
<td>notebook</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공항</td>
<td>airport</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과장남</td>
<td>section chief</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>관하여</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>광주(시)</td>
<td>Kwang Ju City</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Term</td>
<td>English Term</td>
<td>Page Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경찰다          OK</td>
<td>김선생님 Mr. Kim</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>평장히 extremely</td>
<td>김치 Kimchi</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교보빌딩 Building Kyobo</td>
<td>까지 up to</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교수님 professor</td>
<td>깎다 cut down</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교실 classroom</td>
<td>깨끗하다 clean</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교외 suburb</td>
<td>꽃 flowers</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통 traffic</td>
<td>꽃가게 flower shop</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교통사고 traffic accident</td>
<td>끝나다 finish</td>
<td>102, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교회 church</td>
<td>나쁘다 bad</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경하다 watch (verb)</td>
<td>납시절 fishing</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경하다 look around</td>
<td>날씨 weather</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경하다 sightseeing</td>
<td>날짜 date</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구내식당 refectory</td>
<td>남대문시장 Namdaemun Market</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구두 shoes</td>
<td>남산 Mount Namsan</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>국 station number</td>
<td>남자 man</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>국민학교 elementary school</td>
<td>남쪽 south</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그것 that thing</td>
<td>내다 pay</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그날 just</td>
<td>내다 treat</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그럼 well, then</td>
<td>내려주다 let someone off</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그렇게 like that/that way</td>
<td>내리다 get off/fall down</td>
<td>112, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or so</td>
<td>내일 tomorrow</td>
<td>68, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그리고 and</td>
<td>냉면 cold noodles</td>
<td>95, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그저 그렇게 so-so</td>
<td>너무 too much</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>극장 theater</td>
<td>네 yes</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>근처 vicinity</td>
<td>네거리 intersection</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>글쎄요 let me see</td>
<td>네시간마다 every four hours</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>급하다 urgent</td>
<td>농장 farm</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>급히 hurriedly</td>
<td>농사가 다 go to hang out</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기다리다 wait</td>
<td>농작 farm</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기분 mood/spirit</td>
<td>농작가 다 leave behind</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기일하다 fill in</td>
<td>누구 who</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기자 reporter</td>
<td>누구 whom</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차 train</td>
<td>누나 sister</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차역 train station</td>
<td>누르다 press</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차표 train ticket</td>
<td>눈 snow</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기후 weather</td>
<td>눈이 오다 it is snowing</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길 street/way</td>
<td>눈들어 lie down</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길 건너 across the street</td>
<td>뉴욕 New York City</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길다 long</td>
<td>뉴욕 New York City</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길 모퉁이 corner</td>
<td>뉴욕 New York City</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길을 잘못들다 enter the</td>
<td>뉴욕 New York City</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong way</td>
<td>뉴욕 New York City</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
느리다 slow 48 들어가다 go inside/enter 44, 133, 170
늦게 오다 arrive late 157 동산 climb 174
늦다 late 129, 149 동산하다 go mountain climbing 174
다 있다 have all 162 다자인 design 124
다니오다 go and come back (honorific) 63 따뜻하다 warm 166
다른 different 158따라오다 follow 135
다음 next 63 때로는 at times 194
다음에 next time 40 다르다 design 124
다치다 get hurt 106 modeling 174
단풍 foliage 170 멀어지다 run out 205
달리다 run 186. 또 again 40
대전(시) Taejon City 137 라지에타 radiator 208
대접하다 treat 186 르망차 Lemans car 211
대체로 in general 119, 174 리터 liter 205
택 house (honorific) 186 마찬가지다 same 194
택택에 thanks (to you) 36 막히다 be jammed 149, 154
답다 warm 177 만나다 to meet 208
대도하다 protest 149 만두국 Wonton soup 93
do(온도) centigrade (°C) 213 만발하다 in full blossom 174
do also 92 만원짜리 worth 10,000 won 143
도서관 library 33 많다 many 58, 87
dowadrida help someone 205 말 word 217
do장 wooden stamp 139 말하다 speak 70
d오에 on the way 157 마다 clear 170
do착하다 arrive 58 맛 taste 96, 189
d독방 single room 175 마다 correct 170
d돈 money 143 매운 것 hot things 176
d돌다 turn around 51 매운 반찬 hot side-dishes 189
d 돌아가다 return 66 매장구 ticket booth 132
d 돌아오다 return 63, 129 백주 beer 188
d동네 neighborhood 194 샐다 hot and spicy 96, 189
d동대문 Dongdaemun 108 머리 head 212
d동료 colleague 211 멀다 far 57, 108
d동물원 zoo 125 명동 Myongdong 102
d등안에 during 208 몇 분 how many persons
두배 twice 117 (honorific) 158
두통 headache 217 몇 호실 what room
둘 two 92 몇 개 some, several 81, 159
둘다 have 154 몇 개 the day after tomorrow 68
둘다 eat (honorific)/take 91, 176
모르다 do not know 40, 117  
모양이다 it seems 194  
모자 hat 103  
목 neck 217  
몰리다 crowded in group 220  
못하다 cannot do 159  
무료로 for free 194  
무슨 날 what kind of date 186  
무슨 일 what kind of work 154  
무승부 draw 106  
무얼(될) what (contraction) 98  
무엇 what 74, 91  
무언 휘발유 unleaded  
gasoline 205  
문을 닫다 close the door 147  
문다 ask 45  
물 water 189  
물건 merchandise 119  
물론 of course 124  
물어보다 ask 213  
워로 by what 63, 129  
미국 America 166  
미국대사관 U.S. Embassy 57  
미스 Miss 28  
미안하다 feel sorry for 149, 180  
미스터 Mr. 28  
미식축구 football 97  
밀려있다 backlogged 213  
밀리다 backed up in a line 149  
바람이 불다 windy 89  
바쁘게 busily 47  
바쁘세요 busy (honorfic) 32  
바꿔주다 let me speak to 180  
바지 trousers 101  
밖(에서) outside 87, 170  
-밖에 없다 nothing but 159  
반바지 short pants 121  
받다 accept 124  
발음 pronunciation 184  
밥 늦게까지 until late at night 194  
밤새도록 until the end of the night 213  
방 room 158  
방문객 visitor 57  
방문하다 visit 117  
방번호 room number 162  
방송국 broadcast station 184  
방학 vacation 154  
배 belly 217  
배(s) ship 59  
배구 volleyball 170  
백화점 department store 55, 119  
버스 - bus 149  
번(호) number 180  
번호 street number 186  
별다 ear 194  
별써 already 166  
벗다 take off 217  
변변치 않다 not good 189  
별거 not special 189  
별로 particularly 32, 57, 97  
보다 see 98  
보다 더 better (or worse)  
보통예금 general account 139  
복도 hallway 99  
복잡하다 crowded 149  
봄 spring 166  
봉지 bag 217  
봉투 envelope 85  
볼다 see (humble form) 36  
바주다 examine/check 208  
부산 Pusan 180  
부임하다 take a new position  
(job) 184  
분명하다 distinctive/clear  
Snack House 160  
분필 chalk 81  
불편하다 feel  
uncomfortable 137, 220  
붓다 swell 217  
비가 오다 it rains 170
비디오 videotape 193
비밀번호 PIN number 139
비밀번호 rice and beef with hot paste 92
비상한 extremely smart 189
비싸다 expensive 118
비행기 airplane 129
빈 방 empty room 159
빠지다 drain out 208
빨간 red 124
빨간( 것 ) red ( thing ) 124
빨리 quickly 149
사계절 four seasons 166
사고가 아니라 an accident occurred 149
사과 apple 178
사다 buy 92
사라지다 disappear 178
사람 people 170
사모님 someone ’ s wife ( honorific ) 193
사무실 office 48
사업, 장사 business 44, 47
사업자 on business 117
시장님 president 28
사전 dictionary 182
산 mountain 170
살다 live 175
살 시간 time to buy 199
새다 leak out 208
새마을 주유소 New Village station 204
새로 생긴 newly opened 205
새로운 new 199
새벽 at dawn 129
색 color 125
생각되다 come to think 217
생산되다 be manufactured 211
생일 ( 생신 ) birthday 68
서랍 drawer 165
서명 signature 139
서명하다 sign one ’ s name 143
서먼아파트 apartment units for low-income people 194
서울거리 Seoul streets 149
서울역 Seoul Station 51
선물 gift 189
선생님 teacher 28
설악산 Mount Sorak 129
설악산행 bound for Mount Sorak 133
성함 name ( honorific ) 139
세종문화회관 King Sejong Cultural Center 108
소개하다 introduce 36
소란스럽다 boisterous 194
소리가 나다 make a noise 194
소파 sofa 139, 199
소풍 picnic 120
소풍가다 go on a picnic 174
손님 passenger 108
쇼핑 shopping 118
수건 towel 107
수고하다 do hard work 44
수고하세요 goodbye 112
수박 watermelon 197
수업 class 167
수영장 swimming pool 174
숙박부 information sheet 165
숙소 living quarters 175
숙식비 room and board fee 175
스키장 ski slope 174
스테플러 stapler 81
승객 passenger 137
승진 promotion 197
시계 clock, watch 106
시원하다 cool 170
시작하다 begin 167
시장 market 131
시청 City Hall 54
시키다 order 96 안녕히 peacefully 32
시합하다 compete 106 안녕히 게십시오 bye-bye
식당 restaurant 32 (to the person leaving) 39
식사하다 have meals 87 안으로 (toward) inside 170
신나다 be excited 211 안전하다 safe 129
신라호텔 Hotel Shinra 117 않다 sit 44
신문 newspaper 75 알다 know 40, 92
신세계 백화점 Shinsaekye
  Department Store 119 알야 늘다 fall ill 173
신호등 traffic signal 112 앞으로 forward 112
실례합니다 excuse me 51, 132 액수 amount 143
실어하다 dislike 98 야구 baseball 98
심하다 severe 217 약도 sketched map 186
십이월 December 170 약속 appointment 102
실타 want/wish 162 양말 . socks 127
싸다 cheap 124 어두워지다 get dark 170
쑤시다 ache 213 어둡다 dark 177
쓰다 write 70 어디 where 32, 63
-씨 Mr./Ms. 28, 43 어떤 some/certain 170
아가씨 Miss 143 어떻게 how 28, 143
아까 a while ago 208 어떻게 (be) how 87
아기 baby 140 어머니 mother 69
아니다 not to be 51 어서 quickly 91, 124
 아니오 no 40, 74 어제 yesterday 98
아마 probably 57, 107 언제 when 63
아무날도 no particular day 186 언제부터 since when 166
아무튼 anyway 57 얼마 how much 112
아버지 남 father 68 없다 don't have 81, 143
아이구 oh! 189 영망이다 messy 199
아저씨 driver/salesman 108, 112, 124 여관 inn 162
여권 번호 passport number 162
아저씨 uncle 141 여권 passport 165
아주 very 57, 98 여기 here 47, 51
아주머니 waitress (married) 91 여기 있습니다 here it is 81, 112
아직도 yet 87, 199 여러 가지 many kinds 124
아파 죽겠다 dying of pain 213 여름 summer 167
아파트 apartment 106, 194 여행 trip 157
아프다 hurt/ache 212, 220 연필 pencil 75
안 not 32 열 fever 213
안녕 peace 28 열쇠 key 84, 162
안녕하세요? how are you? 28 영어 English 154
영화  movie  142  용접실  living room  199
열방  next room  81  이것  this thing  74
열집  next door  194  여다  to be  74
예  yes  28, 47  이리  this way  44
예금  savings  139  이번  this time  129
예금하다  deposit  139  이분  this person (honoris)  36
예쁘다  pretty  172  이사하다  move  194
예약하다  make a reservation  158  이상한  strange  208
오늘  today  33  -이/에요  is/are  47
오래간만  long time  28, 47  이태원  Itaewon  127
오래전에  a while ago  149  인사하다  great  40
오른쪽  right side  108  인삼차  ginseng tea  154
오후  afternoon  118  임니다  is/are  28
은돌방  room with built-in stone heat  158  일  work  102
은물  all body parts  213  일본  Japan  198
올라가다  go up  213  일어나다  occur  149
옷  clothes  217  일요일  Sunday  129
완전히  completely  149  일주일  one week  154
외국인  foreigner  176  읽다  read  159
원쪽  left side  51, 108  일어버리다  to get lost  57
요금  fare  112  임대해 주다  rent a property (for an employee)  194
요새  lately  47, 154  있다  to be/to exist  63
요즈음  (요즘) these days  28, 154  있어요  have  81
우선  first of all  139  자다  sleep  45
우유  milk  45  자전거  bicycle  65
우체국  post office  32, 186  자주  frequently  68
운전기사  driver  108, 117  작다  small  125
운동장  field  170  잘  well  28, 63
움직이다  move around  157  잘되다  doing well  47
원  won  112  잘알았습니다  understood well  133
월(달)  month  166  잘못 걸다  dial the wrong number  180
유행성 독감  contagious flu  217  잘못 걸다  dial the wrong number  180
육교  overpass  54  장  counting unit for tickets  132
의자  chair  58  잔간만  for a moment  44, 81, 139
의사선생님  medical doctor  28  장관  minister  176
와/는  as for...  28  재미있다  interesting  98
운행  bank  147  재수  luck  211
운식  meal/food  87  저것  that thing  74
용급실  emergency room  220
저기 over there 51 지금 now 32
저녁, 밤 night/evening 97, 180 지나(가)다 go (pass) by 57, 112
저녁식사 supper 102 지내다 get along 28
저는 as for me (humble) 32 지도 map 81
저쪽으로 that way 51 지불하다 pay 117
저회들 we (humble) 162 -지 않다 not (long form) 119
적다 write 139 지여주다 prescribe 220
적이도 at least 208 지역 region 170
전에 before 149 지우개 eraser 82
전화 phone call 180 지폐 paper bill 143
전화문서 것 phone call that came 180 지하도 underpass 55
전화걸다 make a phone call 102, 180 직원 staff 186
접심하다 have lunch 87 진찰대 examination table 217
정도 about 108 진찰을 받다 be examined 220
정돈 arrangement 203 질 quality 118
정류장 station/bus stop 137 집 moving stuff 199
정리되다 in order 199 집가방 luggage bag 124
정말로 really 47 집에 (to) home 45, 63
정문 main gate 149 집사람 one’s wife 199
정비 repair 208 차 car 65, 149
정오 noon 65 차로 by car 57
정원일 gardening 59 차린 것 things that one
제 my (humble) 36 displayed 189
제과점 bakery 112 찬장 cupboard 199
제일금융회사 First Banking Company 147 창 really 47
조그만 tiny 189 참다 put up with 220
조금전에 a little while ago 149 참외 melon 197
조마조마하다 nervous 211 찻집 tearoom 208
조심하다 be cautious 51 창문 window 205
조용하다 quiet 194 찾다 look for 124
종 a little 32 재식 living on vegetables 192
종더 a little further 112 책 book 74
종다 good 47 책상 desk 74
좋아하다 like 88 처방전 prescription 217
주말 weekend 63, 186 처방해 주다 give someone a
주소 address 139, 186 처방 prescription 217
주유소 gas station 205 처음 first time 36
지갑 purse 183 천만에요. you’re welcome
지국 branch bureau 184 51, 81, 129
할머니 grandmother 141  호텔 hotel 159
할 일 things to do 154  혼잡하다 congested 151
해열제 medication for high fever 220  홍차 black tea 88
행원 (은행원) bank teller 143  후예 after 208
현금 cash 124, 143  휴게실 lounge 83
현금을 찾다 withdraw money 143  회사 company 176
형님 one's older brother 72, 137  회의 meeting 109
험들다 difficult 154
English–Korean glossary

about 정도, 관하여 108, 157
accept 허락하다, 받다 124
accident 사고 149
ache 아프다. 쓰시다 212, 220
across the street 길 건너 59
address 주소 139, 186
after 후에 208
afternoon 오후 118
again 또 40
airplane 비행기 129
airport 공항 117
all body parts 온몸 213
alley 골목 57
almost 거의 204
already 벌써 166
also 도 92
America 미국 166
amount 액수 143
and 그리고 143
anyway 아무튼 57
apartment 아파트 106, 194
apartment units for low-income people 서민아파트 194
apple 사과 178
appointment 약속 102
are -이/에요 47
arrangement 정돈 203
arrive 도착하다 58
arrive late 늦게오다 157
as for... ~은/는 28
as for me (humble) 저는 32
ask 묻다. 물어보다 45, 213
at dawn 새벽 129
at home 집에 45, 63
at least 적어도 208
at times 때로는 194
autumn 가을 170
baby 아기 140
backed up in a line 밀리다 149
backlogged 밀려있다 213
bad 나쁘다 100
bag 봉지 217
bakery 베키 112
bank 은행 147
bank teller 행원(은행원) 143
baseball 야구 98
to be 이다 74
to be, to exist 있다 63
be cautious 조심하다 51
be examined 진찰을 받다 220
be excited 신나다 211
(be) how 어렵다 89
be invited 초대받다 193
be jammed 막히다 149, 154
be manufactured 생산되다 211
be scared 겁이 날다 211
be thankful 고맙다 81
be tired 피곤하다 48
be worried 걱정이 되다 211
beer 맥주 188
before 전에 149
begin 시작하다 167
belly 배 217
better (or worse) than 보다 더 118
bicycle 자전거 65
big 크다 89
big problem 큰 일 205
birthday 생일(생신) 68
blackboard 철판 181
black tea 흑차 88
bloom 피다 167
blue (thing) 파란(것) 124
boisterous 소란스럽다 194
book 책 74
born 태어나다 141
bound for Mount Sorak 설악산행 133
branch bureau 지국 184
bring 가져오다 189
broadcast station 방송국 184
broken down 고장나다 208
building 건물 108
Building Kyobo 교보빌딩 108
bus 버스 149
busily 바쁘게 47
business 사업, 장사 44, 47
busy 바쁘다 32
buy 사다 92
by car 차로 57
by foot 걸어서 57
by what 뭐로, 무엇으로 63, 129
bye-bye (to the person leaving) 안녕히게심시오 40
cannot do 못하다 159
car 차 65, 149
cash 현금 124, 143
cashier’s desk 계산대 146
centigrade 도(°C) 213
certain 어떤 170
chair 의자 58
chalk 분필 81
cheap 값이 싸다 87, 124
check 찐다 208
check in 투숙하다 165

church 교회 33
City Hall 시청 51
class 수업 167
classroom 교실 82
clean 깨끗하다 199
cleaning 청소 205
clear 분명하다. 답다 119, 166
climb 등산 174
clock 시계 106
close the door 문을 닫다 147
clothes 옷 217
coffee 커피 47
cold 감기. 춼다 167, 213
cold medicine 감약 217
cold noodles 냉면 95, 125
colleague 동료 211
color 색 125
column 컬럼 139
come to think 생각하다 217
comfortable 편하다 129
company 회사 176
compete 경합하다 106
completely 완전히 149
congested 혼잡하다 151
contagious flu 유행성 독감 217
cool 시원하다 170
corner 길모퉁이 60, 205
correct 맞다 170
counting unit for tickets 장 132
credit card 신용카드 124
cross 건너다 51
crowded 복잡하다 149
crowded with people 몰리다 220
cupboard 찬장 199
cut down 깎다 124
cut the price 값을 깎다 127
dark 어둡다 177
date 날짜 139
December 십이월 170
department store 백화점 55, 119
deposit (verb) 예금하다 139
design 디자인 124
desk 책상 74  exist 있다 63

dial the wrong number 잘못 걸다 180  expensive 비싸다 118

dictionary 사전 182  extremely 굉장히 166
different 다른 158  extremely smart 비상 189
difficult 힘들다 154  fall down 내리다 174
disappear 사라지다 178  fall ill 앓아눕다 173
dislike 싫어하다 98  far 멀다 57, 108
distinctive 분명하다 166  fare 요금 112
do 하다 28  farm 농장 205
do hard work 수고하다 44  father 아버님 68
do not know 모르다 40, 117  feel sorry for 미안하다 149, 180
doing OK 편하다 28  feel uncomfortable 불편하다 220
doing well 쌩 잘나다 47  female waitress (married) 91
don’t have 없다 81, 143  fetch 가져다 주다 81
don’t worry 걱정 마세요 217  fever 열 213
Dongdaemoon 동대문 108  field 운동장 170
drain out 빼지다 208  fill in 기입하다 149
draw 무승부 106  finish 끝나다 102, 106
drawer 서랍 165  First Banking Company 재일금융회사 146
driver 운전기사. 아저씨 108, 117  first of all 우선 139

drop by 들리다 159  first one-third of month 초순 170
during 동안에 208  first time 처음 36
dying of pain 아파 죽겠다 213  fishing 낚시질 170
earn 별다 194  fix 고치다 208
eat (honorific) 들다 91, 176  flowers 꽃 167
elementary school 국민학교 218  flower shop 꽃가게 193
emergency patient 응급환자 212  foliage 단풍 170
emergency room 응급실 220  follow 따라하다 135
empty room 빈 방 159  football 미식축구 97
English 영어 154  for a moment 잠깐만 44, 81, 139
enter 들어가다 44, 133, 170  for free 무료로 194
enter the wrong way 길을 잘못들다 117
for a moment 잠깐만 44, 81, 139
entrance 길을 잘못들다 117
envelope 봉투 85  for free 무료로 194
eraser 지우개 82  foreigner 외국인 176
evening 저녁, 밤 97, 180  forward 앞으로 112
every four hours 4시간씩 154  four seasons 사계절 166
every four hours 4 시간씩 154  frequently 자주 68
examination table 진찰대 217  friend 친구 36
examine 전찰하다, 봐주다 208  friend’s house 친구집 97
excuse me 실례합니다 51, 132  from 한테서 180
front 앞 149
Japan  198
jeans  177
just  189
Kangnam “south of Han river”  203
key  84, 162
Kimchi  189
King Sejong Cultural Center  108
know  40, 92
Korea  167
Korea University  고려대학교 149.
Korean language book  74
Korean restaurant  한국식당 96
Korean store  한국가게 127
Kwang Ju City  광주(시)  137
late  늦다  129, 149
lately  요새  47, 154
leak out  새다  208
leave  떠나다.  출발하다  129, 132
leave behind  남다  147
leave for the day  퇴근하다  106
left side  왼쪽  51, 108
Lemans car  르망차  211
let me see  가만 있지.  124, 129
let me speak to  바꿔주다  180
let someone off  내려주다  112
letter  편지  69
library  도서관  33
lie down  눕다  217
light  가볍다  177
like  좋아하다  88
like that  그렇게  154
liter  리터  205
a little  좀  32
a little further  좀더  112
a little while ago  조금 전에  149
live  살다  175
living on vegetables  채식  192
living quarters  숙소  175
living room  옆집실  199
long  길다  171
long time  오래간만  28, 47
look around  구경하다  199
luck  재수  211
luggage bag  짐가방  124
main gate  정문  149
make a noise  소리가 나다  194
make a phone call  전화걸다  102, 180
make a reservation  예약하다  158
man  남자  79
many  많다  58, 87
many kinds  여러가지  124
map  지도  81
market  시장  131
marry  결혼하다  150
meal  음식  87
medical doctor  의사선생님  28
medication for high fever  해열제  220
(to) meet  만나다  208
meeting  회의  109
merchandise  물건  119
messy  영망이다  199
milk  우유  45
minister  장관  176
Miss  아가씨  28, 143
a moment  잠깐  44
money  돈  143
month  월(달)  166
mood  기분  47
mother  어머니  69
mountain  산  170
movie  영화  142
moving stuff  짐  199
Mr.  미스터,  씨  27
Mr. Kim  김선생님  27
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Characters</th>
<th>Chinese Word</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Characters</th>
<th>Chinese Word</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Characters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ms., Miss 씨</td>
<td>28, 143</td>
<td>Ms., Miss</td>
<td>女士, 女</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>女士</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>女士</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mount Namsan 남산</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>Mount Namsan</td>
<td>南山</td>
<td>47, 87, 158</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>南山</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>南山</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mount Sorak 설악산</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>Mount Sorak</td>
<td>设悦山</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>设悦山</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>设悦山</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much 아주</td>
<td>57, 98</td>
<td>much</td>
<td>那么多</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>那么多</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>那么多</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my 제</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>我的</td>
<td>176</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>我的</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>我的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myeongdong 명동</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>Myeongdong</td>
<td>明洞</td>
<td>193</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>明洞</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>明洞</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namdaemoon Market 남대문시장</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>Namdaemoon Market</td>
<td>南大门市场</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>南大门市场</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>南大门市场</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name (honorific) 성함</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>name (honorific)</td>
<td>名</td>
<td>72, 137</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>名</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>名</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neck 목</td>
<td>217</td>
<td>neck</td>
<td>颈</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>颈</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>颈</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necktie 넥타이</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>necktie</td>
<td>领带</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>领带</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>领带</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need (something) 필요하다</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>need (something)</td>
<td>需要</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>需要</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>需要</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need (noun) 필요</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>need (noun)</td>
<td>需要</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>需要</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>需要</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighborhood 동네</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>neighborhood</td>
<td>邻居</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>邻居</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>邻居</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nervous 조마조마다다</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>nervous</td>
<td>神经</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>神经</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>神经</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new 새로운</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>new</td>
<td>新的</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>新的</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>新的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York City 뉴욕</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>New York City</td>
<td>纽约</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>纽约</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>纽约</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newly opened 새로 연</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>newly opened</td>
<td>新开业</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>新开业</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>新开业</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper 신문</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>报纸</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>报纸</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>报纸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Village station 새마을주유소</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>New Village station</td>
<td>新村加油站</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>新村加油站</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>新村加油站</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next 다음</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>next</td>
<td>下一个</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>下一个</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>下一个</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next door 옆집</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>next door</td>
<td>下一个门</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>下一个门</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>下一个门</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next room 옆방</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>next room</td>
<td>下一个房间</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>下一个房间</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>下一个房间</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next time 다음에</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>next time</td>
<td>下一次</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>下一次</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>下一次</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night/evening 저녁 (받)</td>
<td>97, 180</td>
<td>night/evening</td>
<td>晚上</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>晚上</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>晚上</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no 아니요 (아뇨)</td>
<td>40, 74</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>否</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>否</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>否</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no particular day 아무날도</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>no particular day</td>
<td>没有特定的日子</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>没有特定的日子</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>没有特定的日子</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noon 정오</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>noon</td>
<td>午</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>午</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>午</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not 안, -지 않다</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>不</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>不</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>不</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not good 변변치 않다</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>not good</td>
<td>不好</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>不好</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>不好</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not have 없습니다</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>not have</td>
<td>没有</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>没有</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>没有</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not special 별거</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>not special</td>
<td>不特别</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>不特别</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>不特别</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not to be 아니다</td>
<td>51, 74</td>
<td>not to be</td>
<td>不是</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>不是</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>不是</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notebook 공책</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>notebook</td>
<td>笔记本</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>笔记本</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>笔记本</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing but -밖에 없다</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>nothing but</td>
<td>只有</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>只有</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>只有</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now 지금</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>现在</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>现在</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>现在</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number 번 (호)</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>number</td>
<td>号</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>号</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>号</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nurse 간호사</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>nurse</td>
<td>护士</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>护士</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>护士</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occur 일어나다</td>
<td>149</td>
<td>occur</td>
<td>发生</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>发生</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>发生</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of course 물론</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>of course</td>
<td>当然</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>当然</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>当然</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>office 사무실</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>office</td>
<td>办公室</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>办公室</td>
<td>俄</td>
<td>办公室</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Page No.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post office</td>
<td>우체국</td>
<td>32, 186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise</td>
<td>칭찬하다</td>
<td>189</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prescribe</td>
<td>지여주다</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prescription</td>
<td>처방전</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>president</td>
<td>사장님</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>press</td>
<td>누르다</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pretty</td>
<td>예쁘다</td>
<td>172</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>price</td>
<td>값</td>
<td>118</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private hospital</td>
<td>개인정보실</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>probably</td>
<td>아마</td>
<td>57, 109</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professor</td>
<td>교수님</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>program</td>
<td>프로그램</td>
<td>97</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promotion</td>
<td>숭진</td>
<td>197</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronunciation</td>
<td>발음</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protest</td>
<td>테모하다</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purse</td>
<td>지갑</td>
<td>183</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pusan</td>
<td>부산</td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up with</td>
<td>참다</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyong</td>
<td>평수</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quality</td>
<td>질</td>
<td>118</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>빨리, 어서</td>
<td>91, 124</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>조용하다</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radiator</td>
<td>라디에타</td>
<td>208</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽다</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>really</td>
<td>정말로, 참</td>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recently</td>
<td>최근에</td>
<td>203</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>빨간</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red thing</td>
<td>빨간 것</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refectory</td>
<td>구내식당</td>
<td>87</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>region</td>
<td>지역</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative</td>
<td>친척</td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rent a property (for an employee)</td>
<td>임대해주다</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repair</td>
<td>정비</td>
<td>208</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reporter</td>
<td>기자</td>
<td>184</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>식당</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return</td>
<td>돌아오다</td>
<td>63, 129</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rice and beef with mixed vegetables and hot paste</td>
<td>비빔밥</td>
<td>92</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to ride</td>
<td>타다</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right away</td>
<td>곧장</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right side</td>
<td>오른쪽</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room</td>
<td>방</td>
<td>158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room and board</td>
<td>숙식비</td>
<td>175</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room number</td>
<td>번호</td>
<td>175</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room with built-in stone heat</td>
<td>온돌방</td>
<td>158</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room with (Western-style) beds</td>
<td>침대방</td>
<td>159, 165</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruler</td>
<td>자</td>
<td>82</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>달리다</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run out</td>
<td>떨어지다</td>
<td>205</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td>안전하다</td>
<td>129</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salesman, -woman</td>
<td>아주씨, 점원</td>
<td>124</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>same</td>
<td>마찬가지다</td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>토요일</td>
<td>129</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>savings</td>
<td>예금</td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scissors</td>
<td>가위</td>
<td>84</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>section chief</td>
<td>과장님</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>보다</td>
<td>98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see (humble form)</td>
<td>빼다</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>팔다</td>
<td>132</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seoul Station</td>
<td>서울역</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seoul streets</td>
<td>서울거리</td>
<td>149</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some, several</td>
<td>몇 개</td>
<td>81, 159</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>severe</td>
<td>심하다</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ship</td>
<td>배</td>
<td>59</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>구두</td>
<td>131</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>쇼핑</td>
<td>118</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short pants</td>
<td>반바지</td>
<td>121</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side</td>
<td>편</td>
<td>189</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sightseeing</td>
<td>구경하다</td>
<td>130</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign one's name</td>
<td>서명하다</td>
<td>143</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signature</td>
<td>서명</td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since when</td>
<td>언제부터</td>
<td>166</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single room</td>
<td>독방</td>
<td>175</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinsaekye Department Store</td>
<td>신세계백화점</td>
<td>119</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sister</td>
<td>누나</td>
<td>79</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>앉다</td>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sketched map</td>
<td>약도</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ski slope</td>
<td>スキーシロップ</td>
<td>스키장</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep 자다</td>
<td>자다</td>
<td>자다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slip 표</td>
<td>표</td>
<td>표</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow 느리다</td>
<td>느리다</td>
<td>느리다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small 작다</td>
<td>작다</td>
<td>작다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snack House 분식점</td>
<td>분식점</td>
<td>분식점</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snore 코골다</td>
<td>코골다</td>
<td>코골다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow 눈</td>
<td>눈</td>
<td>눈</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soccer 축구</td>
<td>축구</td>
<td>축구</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socks 양말</td>
<td>양말</td>
<td>양말</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sofa 소파</td>
<td>소파</td>
<td>소파</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some 어떤</td>
<td>어떤</td>
<td>어떤</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sometimes 가끔</td>
<td>가끔</td>
<td>가끔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone's wife (honorable)</td>
<td>사모님</td>
<td>사모님</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorry 미안하다</td>
<td>미안하다</td>
<td>미안하다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so-so 그저 그렇게</td>
<td>그저 그렇게</td>
<td>그저 그렇게</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>south 남쪽</td>
<td>남쪽</td>
<td>남쪽</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak 말하다</td>
<td>말하다</td>
<td>말하다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spirits 기분</td>
<td>기분</td>
<td>기분</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring 봄</td>
<td>봄</td>
<td>봄</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>staff 직원</td>
<td>직원</td>
<td>직원</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stapler 스테플러</td>
<td>스테플러</td>
<td>스테플러</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>station 정류장</td>
<td>정류장</td>
<td>정류장</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>station number 국</td>
<td>국</td>
<td>국</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strange 이상한</td>
<td>이상한</td>
<td>이상한</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>street 길, 거리</td>
<td>거리</td>
<td>거리</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>street number 번지</td>
<td>번지</td>
<td>번지</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student 학생</td>
<td>학생</td>
<td>학생</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study 공부하다</td>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td>공부하다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sturdy 둥근하다</td>
<td>둥근하다</td>
<td>둥근하다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suburb 교외</td>
<td>교외</td>
<td>교외</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subway station 지하철역</td>
<td>지하철역</td>
<td>지하철역</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summer 여름</td>
<td>여름</td>
<td>여름</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunday 일요일</td>
<td>일요일</td>
<td>일요일</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supper 저녁식사</td>
<td>저녁식사</td>
<td>저녁식사</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swell 봉다</td>
<td>봉다</td>
<td>봉다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming pool 수영장</td>
<td>수영장</td>
<td>수영장</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taejon City 대전시</td>
<td>대전시</td>
<td>대전시</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take 들어다. 걸리다</td>
<td>들어다. 걸리다</td>
<td>들어다. 걸리다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take a new position (job)</td>
<td>부임하다</td>
<td>부임하다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off 빗다</td>
<td>빗다</td>
<td>빗다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tall 키가 크다</td>
<td>키가 크다</td>
<td>키가 크다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taste 맛</td>
<td>맛</td>
<td>맛</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taxi 택시</td>
<td>택시</td>
<td>택시</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taxi fare 택시비</td>
<td>택시비</td>
<td>택시비</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach 가르치다</td>
<td>가르치다</td>
<td>가르치다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teacher 선생님</td>
<td>선생님</td>
<td>선생님</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>team 팀</td>
<td>팀</td>
<td>팀</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tearoom 찻집</td>
<td>찻집</td>
<td>찻집</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test 테스트</td>
<td>테스트</td>
<td>테스트</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank you 감사합니다</td>
<td>감사합니다</td>
<td>감사합니다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank 감사하다</td>
<td>감사하다</td>
<td>감사하다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thanks (to you) 덕택해</td>
<td>덕택해</td>
<td>덕택해</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that thing 그것, 저것</td>
<td>그것, 저것</td>
<td>그것, 저것</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that way 저쪽</td>
<td>저쪽</td>
<td>저쪽</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that way (toward the hearer)</td>
<td>(toward the hearer)</td>
<td>(toward the hearer)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that way (toward the hearer)</td>
<td>(toward the hearer)</td>
<td>(toward the hearer)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>things that one displayed</td>
<td>표</td>
<td>표</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw a party 파티하다</td>
<td>파티하다</td>
<td>파티하다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket 표</td>
<td>표</td>
<td>표</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time 시간</td>
<td>시간</td>
<td>시간</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time to buy 살 시간</td>
<td>살 시간</td>
<td>살 시간</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiny 조금만</td>
<td>조금만</td>
<td>조금만</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to) home 집에</td>
<td>집에</td>
<td>집에</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to someone (younger person)</td>
<td>(younger person)</td>
<td>(younger person)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-한테</td>
<td>한테</td>
<td>한테</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today 오늘</td>
<td>오늘</td>
<td>오늘</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>together 같이</td>
<td>같이</td>
<td>같이</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow 내일</td>
<td>내일</td>
<td>내일</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tonsil 편도선</td>
<td>편도선</td>
<td>편도선</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
too much 너무 124

toward the inside 안으로 170

towel 수건 107

traffic 교통 149, 184

traffic accident 교통사고 149

traffic signal 신호등 112

train 기차, 열차 63, 129

train station 기차역 68

train ticket 기차표 132

treat 내다, 대접하다 91, 186

trip 여행 157

trouser 바지 101

try to go 가보다 40

T-shirt 티셔츠 122

(one’s) turn 차례 91

turn around 돌다 51

tutoring 개인지도 154

TV 텔레비전 97, 106

twice 두배 117

two 둘 92

uncle 아저씨 92

underpass 지하도 55

understood well 잘 알았습니다 133

unleaded gasoline 무연회발유 205

until late at night 밤 늦게까지 194

until the end of the night 밤새도도록 213

up to까지 108

urgent 급하다 180

U.S. Embassy 미국대사관 57

vacation 방학 154

very 아주, 매우 57, 98, 176

vicinity 근처 205

videotape 비디오 193

violent sports 거친 운동 98

visit 방문하다 117

volleyball 배구 170

wait 기다리다 44

walk 걸어다니다 170

want/wish 싫다 162

warm 덥다, 따뜻하다 177

watch 구경하다 106, 170

water 물 189

watermelon 수박 197

way 길 157

we (humble) 저희들 162

weather 기후, 날씨 166, 170

weekend 주말 63, 186

well 잘 28, 63

well, then 그럼 132

what 무엇 74, 91

what (contraction) 무얼, 필 98

what kind of date 무슨 날 186

what kind of work 무슨 일 154

what room number? 몇 호실? 162

when 언제 63

where 어디 32, 63

a while ago 오래전에 149, 208

white 하얗다 189

who 누구 44

whom 누구 180

window 창문 205

windy 바람이 불다 89

wish 하고 싶다 162

with 하고 102

withdraw money 현금을 찾다 143

withdrawal slip 청구서 143

won 원 112

Wonton soup 만두국 93

wooden stamp 도장 139

word 말 217

work 일 102

worth 10,000 won 만원짜리 143

write 쓰다, 적다 70, 139

yellow (thing) 노란(것) 124

yes 예, 네 28, 47

yesterday 어제 98

yet 아직도 87, 199

you’re welcome 천만에요 51, 81

you’re quite welcome 천만에요 129

zoo 동물원 125
### Glossary of terms used

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Action verb</td>
<td>Verb expressing an action (e.g., “go,” “eat”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectival verb</td>
<td>Verb describing or limiting a noun (e.g., “big” 크다 or “big house” 큰 집). Roughly equivalent to an adjective in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>A word that modifies a verb (e.g., “quickly”), adjective (e.g., “very bright”), or another adverb (e.g., “very well”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary</td>
<td>One of the set of verbs (“can,” “may,” “must,” etc.) subordinate to the lexical verb (e.g., “go”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case marker</td>
<td>A grammatical marker used to indicate the function of a word in a sentence (e.g., subject case, object case)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal conjunction</td>
<td>A term used to indicate a cause-and-effect relationship between two clauses (e.g., “because,” “since”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Sentence which gives an order (e.g., “Come here, Jane.”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative</td>
<td>A term used to make a comparison between two objects (e.g., “bigger,” “smaller”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound</td>
<td>A term used to combine two words into a single word (e.g., “rain” + “fall” = “rainfall”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunction</td>
<td>A word that connects two or more words, phrases, or clauses (e.g., “although,” “but”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consonant</td>
<td>Sound made by a closure or narrowing in the vocal tract (e.g., /k/, /g/)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contraction</td>
<td>A term used to shorten forms of words (e.g., “he’s,” “wouldn’t”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinate conjunction</td>
<td>A conjunction that connects two main clauses (e.g., “and”, “but,” “or”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correlational pattern</td>
<td>Combination of more than two prepositions in sentence structure (e.g., “from . . . to”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declarative</td>
<td>Verb form or sentence/clause used to state a fact (e.g., “John is ill today.”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>Adjective or pronoun indicating the person or thing referred to (e.g., &quot;this,&quot; &quot;that&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dependent clause</td>
<td>Refers to a group of words that contain a subject and a predicate but which depends on the main clause to complete its meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discourse</td>
<td>A continuous stretch of language larger than a sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclamation</td>
<td>Sentence which expresses the speaker's feelings (e.g., &quot;What a pity!&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existential verb</td>
<td>Verb expressing existence, sometimes preceded by &quot;there&quot; (e.g., &quot;(there) exists,&quot; &quot;located&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honorific</td>
<td>Word or part of a word used to express levels of politeness or respect, especially in relation to the compared social status of the participants (e.g., &quot;Your Majesty&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect speech</td>
<td>Used of grammatical constructions to report in one's own words what another speaker has said (e.g., &quot;He said he did not go there.&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>Type of sentence which asks a question (e.g., &quot;Are you studying Korean?&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intransitive verb</td>
<td>A verb which cannot take a direct object (e.g., &quot;*He went the egg.&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linking verb</td>
<td>A verb that describes a condition related to the subject (e.g., &quot;is,&quot; &quot;seem,&quot; &quot;become&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main clause</td>
<td>A group of words containing subject and predicate which stands alone as a sentence (e.g., &quot;He is cutting the grass on the field.&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modifier</td>
<td>A word used in a sentence to qualify the meaning (e.g., &quot;bad man&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negation</td>
<td>Construction that contradicts all or some of a sentence's meaning (e.g., &quot;not,&quot; &quot;nobody&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominalization</td>
<td>A term used to indicate the process of forming a noun from some other word class (e.g., &quot;his going to the theater&quot; – verb to noun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>Name of a person, a place, thing, or a quality (e.g., &quot;book&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>Constituent of the sentence which is the &quot;receiver&quot; or &quot;goal&quot; of the action of the verb (e.g., &quot;He cashed the check at the bank.&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particle</td>
<td>A term use to refer to an element which does not readily fit into parts of speech (e.g., &quot;to swim,&quot; &quot;I do not understand&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permissive conjunction</td>
<td>Conjunction which expresses being allowed to do something (e.g., “may”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permissive ending</td>
<td>An ending which permits the action of the verb in a sentence to take place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive</td>
<td>A term used to show ownership (e.g., “his,” “my”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postposition</td>
<td>A word of place and time in Korean which follows a noun (or noun phrase) (e.g., 집 “house” + 을 “to”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predicate</td>
<td>All remaining parts of the sentence other than the subject (“I walked to school”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>A term used to refer to a contrast of a temporal or durative kind of the verb (e.g., “He is studying physics.”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>A word used to substitute for the name of a person, place, or thing (e.g., “he,” “it”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative clause marker</td>
<td>A grammatical element which combines one noun (or noun phrase) with another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relativization</td>
<td>The process of combining a clause into a noun phrase (e.g., “The man who went was . . .”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relativize</td>
<td>The process of combining one noun phrase with another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request</td>
<td>Sentence asking someone to do something (e.g., “Please come here.”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentence</td>
<td>A group of words that expresses a complete thought (e.g., “A boy fell into the pond.”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sino-Korean</td>
<td>Adjective used to refer to words that have originated in Chinese characters and have become Koreanized in their pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stative verb</td>
<td>Verb describing a condition which relates only to the subject, expressing a state of affairs rather than an action (e.g., “know,” “believe”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subordinate clause</td>
<td>A group of words that contains a subject and a predicate but depends on the main clause to complete its meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subordinate conjunction</td>
<td>A term used to refer to a word or group of words used to connect a subordinate clause to another part of the sentence (e.g., “although,” “since,” “after”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffix</td>
<td>Additional element added after a root or stem to express grammatical relationships or create new words (e.g., “wanted,” “internalize”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superlative</td>
<td>Term used to describe adjectives or adverbs to express a comparison between more than two entities (e.g., “best,” “longest”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal conjunction</td>
<td>Conjunction which marks a difference in time (e.g., &quot;after,&quot; &quot;before&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tense</td>
<td>The way grammar marks the time at which the action denoted by the verb took place (e.g., present, past, and future)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topic</td>
<td>The person or thing about which something is said. In most instances, the topic coincides with the subject of a sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transitive verb</td>
<td>A verb which can take a direct object (e.g., &quot;I saw the film.&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>A word used to describe an action or to state a condition (e.g., &quot;love,&quot; &quot;exist&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb stem</td>
<td>Root of a verb, except the last syllable (-다-) which follows it (e.g., 가- in the verb 가다 &quot;go&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vowel</td>
<td>Speech sound made without a complete closure in the mouth or a degree of narrowing which would produce audible friction (e.g., /e/, /i/, /u/)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Grammar index

L = Lesson

addressing Korean adults L1
adjectival verb 어떻다 L10
adverbial ending -게 L3
alternative expressions for
  요즘 어떻게 지내세요? L1
auxiliary verb -ㄹ(을) 수 있다 L9

built-in honorific verbs L3

causal conjunctions
  -아(어/여)서 L3
  -(으)니가 L12
  -기 때문에 L13
  -(이)라서 L19
  -ㄹ(을)테니 L20

comparative particle -보다
  (더) L10
compound form -아(어/여)
  보다 L14

compound verb(s)
  갔다 오다 L11
  내려주다 vs. 내려드리다 L9
  -다니다 L16
  -러 가다/오다 L15
  -아(어/여)지다 L15
  한 틀 내다 L18

compound verb ending -아(어/여)
  지다 L15

compound verb form -아(어/여)
  주다 L19

conjunctions
  -지만 L8
  -는데 L8
  -ㄹ(을) 겪 L18
  -ㄹ/을 때에 L17
  -만 L7
  -아(어)서 L9
  -(으)면서 L20
  -자마자 L18
  -지만 L8
  -아(어/여)서 L3
  -(으)면서 L20

of condition or stipulation
  -(으)면 L4

permissive conjunction
  -아(어/여)도 L20

conjunctive particle
  -와/과 L12

conjunctive postposition
  -하고 L11

consonant ㅎ L4

contracted forms
  누굴 L16
  여길니 L4
  될 L7

contracted sentence ending
  -(으)나 L10
  -만 L17
coordinate conjunctions
- 고 L7
- 이고 L9
correlational pattern
-에서 (부터) -까지 L9
days of the month L12
days of the week L11
declaratives L2
degree word 정도 L9
demonstrative modifiers 이, 그, 저 L6
dependent nouns
- 호실 L14
형 L11
double past tense marker 었(았)었 L13
echoing the question L8
emphatic marker - 도 L7
exclamatory endings
- 군요 L13
- 떡 (은/는) 데요 L10
- 네요 L15
existential verb 있다 L5
expression 마찬가지다 L18
future modification marker��(을) L13
future tense marker 갈 L2
honorable markers 시/세 L5
honorable/non-honorable verb forms
and their usage L3, L5
honorable subject case marker L5
“How are you?”, polite expression L1
idiomatic expressions L7, L20
informal endings
- 이에요 L3
- 이에요/아니에요 L6
informal sentence ending 을/을 거예요 L4
informal ending, less polite
- 지요 L7
informal verb ending - 아(여/여)요 L4
intentional/conditional ending
-(으)려면 L12
interrogatives L2
interrupting someone at work L3
irregular verbs
들다 L7
ㄹ L16
ㄴ L10, L17
ending in 는 L16
Korean numbers 1–100 (cardinal) L7
Korean sentence structure L2
Korean telephone numbers L16
large numbers and money L9
less polite informal ending
- 지요 L7
linking verb 아닙니다 L6
linking verb - 입니다 L2
location and direction L4
long negation forms
- 지 못하다 L14
- 지 않다 L10
manner adverb 별로 L1
modification marker - 례(을) L13
months of the year L12
names L1
negation L4
negative marker - 안 L1
negative questions L16
negative sentence ending  
-바로 없다 L14
nominalizing marker -기 L17
nominalizing suffix -기 L15
noun counter -장 L11
noun modifier -ㄴ(은) L8
noun particle -색 L13

noun suffixes
-ㅋ(을) 정도로 L20
-전부터 L16
-짜리 L12

object case marker -을/를 L7

obligation sentence ending
-아(여/여)야 되다 L13
-아 하다 L4

particles
-도록 L20
만 L10
만큼 for base comparison L10
-어나 L11
-에서(부터) L9
-전에 L13
-까지 L9

past tense L7

permissive ending -아(여/여)도 되다 L17

personal pronouns
우리 L15
나, 너, 그 L2

pointing words 이것, 그것, 저것;
이분, 그분, 저분 L6

polite questions L4

possessive marker -의 L3

postpositions
-에 L1, L6
-에서 L5
-에 (place) L5
-에 (time) L5
-에다가 L12

-(으)로 L4, L14
-하고 L8
-한테 L13
-한테서 L16

postposition 에 (place), deletion of L5

progressive tense form
-고 있다 L11

pronoun 누구/누가 L5

purpose endings
-(으)려고 L12
-(으)려 L12

question word 어떤 L15

relative clause markers
-ㄴ(은)/는/ㅋ(을) L11
-ㄴ(은/는)것 L16

requests L2, L6

saying goodbye L2

semi-causal ending -거든요 L19

sentence endings
-고 싶다 L14
-곳 L13
-을것 같다 L10
-곤하다 L18
-거든요 L5, L19
-기는 하다 L19
-기로 하다 L19
-네요 L15
-ㄴ(은/는)것 같다 L15
-ועד L6
-는 때가 있다 L15
-ㄴ(은/는)데요 L10
-ㄴ(은) 모양이다 L18
-ㄴ(은/는)것 같다 L15
-ㄴ(은) 적이 있다 L20
-ㄴ(은)지가... 되다 L18
-는 지 물어 보다 L20
-ㄴ(은) 편이다 L17
-ㅋ(을) 거예요 L4
- 르 (을) 계요 L10
- 르 (을) 것 같다 L10
- 르 (을) 계획이요 L18
- 르 (을) 뻘 하다 L19
- 르 (을) 시간이 있다 L18
- 르 (을) 수 있다 L9
- 르 (을) 까 하고 L11
- 르 (을) 지 모르겠다 L14
- 르 (을) 필요가 있다 L18
- 르 (을) 라고 하다 L16
- 면서요? L18
- 밖에 없다 L14
- 아하다 L4
- 아 (여/여) 버리다 L19
- 아 (여/여) 보다 L14
- 아 (여/여) 있다 L20
- 어 보이다 L17
- 이 필요하다 L12
- 음) 믿니 다 L11
- 음) 믿니 뒤나 L19
- 음) 믿니 좋겠다 L17
- 음) 거돈요 L5
- 음) 돼요? L20
- 이에요/아나에요 L6
- 음) 라고 생각되다 L20
- 세 요 L1
- 시조 L9

sentence expressing an identity
- 었니 다/있니 까? L6

Sino-Korean numbers (1–100)
L8

stative verb 많다 L13
subject case marker -이/가 L2
subject tense marker -겠 L2
subordinate conjunction
- 느 (은) 후에 L8

suggestion endings
- 실까요? L7
- ( 데) 시다 L7

superlatives 가장, 제일 L10
telling the time L8
temporal conjunctions
- 기 전에 L13
- 동안에 L19
- 음/음 때에 L17
topic case marker -은/는 L1, L6, L7
verbs
- 걸리다 L9
- 있습니다 L6
필요하다 L2
보다/보다 L17
좋다/좋아하다 L16
of existence 있다 L5
verb forms 같다 주다 vs
- 같다 드리다 L13
verb stem -는 L8
verb stem 월
verb types L8

year dates L12
COLLOQUIAL KOREAN is easy to use and completely up to date!

Specially written by an experienced teacher for self-study or class use, the course offers you a step-by-step approach to written and spoken Korean. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

What makes COLLOQUIAL KOREAN your best choice in personal language learning?

- Interactive – lots of exercises for regular practice
- Clear – concise grammar notes
- Practical – useful vocabulary and pronunciation guide
- Complete – including answer key and reference section

By the end of this rewarding course you will be able to communicate confidently and effectively in Korean in a broad range of everyday situations.

Two 60-minute cassettes or CDs are available to complement the book. Recorded by native speakers, this material will help develop your listening and pronunciation skills.